

RECEIVED: July 6, 2020

ACCEPTED: July 26, 2020

PUBLISHED: August 26, 2020

# Two-loop superstring five-point amplitudes. Part I. Construction via chiral splitting and pure spinors

---

Eric D'Hoker,<sup>a</sup> Carlos R. Mafra,<sup>b</sup> Boris Pioline<sup>c</sup> and Oliver Schlotterer<sup>d</sup>

<sup>a</sup>*Mani L. Bhaumik Institute for Theoretical Physics, Department of Physics and Astronomy,  
University of California,  
Los Angeles, CA 90095, U.S.A.*

<sup>b</sup>*STAG Research Centre and Mathematical Sciences, University of Southampton,  
Highfield, Southampton SO17 1BJ, U.K.*

<sup>c</sup>*Laboratoire de Physique Théorique et Hautes Energies,  
CNRS and Sorbonne Université, UMR 7589,  
Campus Pierre et Marie Curie, 4 Place Jussieu 75252 Paris, France*

<sup>d</sup>*Department of Physics and Astronomy, Uppsala University,  
75108 Uppsala, Sweden*

*E-mail:* [dhoker@physics.ucla.edu](mailto:dhoker@physics.ucla.edu), [c.r.mafra@soton.ac.uk](mailto:c.r.mafra@soton.ac.uk),  
[pioline@lpthe.jussieu.fr](mailto:pioline@lpthe.jussieu.fr), [oliver.schlotterer@physics.uu.se](mailto:oliver.schlotterer@physics.uu.se)

**ABSTRACT:** The full two-loop amplitudes for five massless states in Type II and Heterotic superstrings are constructed in terms of convergent integrals over the genus-two moduli space of compact Riemann surfaces and integrals of Green functions and Abelian differentials on the surface. The construction combines elements from the BRST cohomology of the pure spinor formulation and from chiral splitting with the help of loop momenta and homology invariance. The  $\alpha' \rightarrow 0$  limit of the resulting superstring amplitude is shown to be in perfect agreement with the previously known amplitude computed in Type II supergravity. Investigations of the  $\alpha'$  expansion of the Type II amplitude and comparisons with predictions from S-duality are relegated to a first companion paper. A construction from first principles in the RNS formulation of the genus-two amplitude with five external NS states is relegated to a second companion paper.

**KEYWORDS:** Scattering Amplitudes, Supergravity Models, Superstrings and Heterotic Strings

ARXIV EPRINT: [2006.05270](https://arxiv.org/abs/2006.05270)

---

**Contents**

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Pure spinors and chiral splitting</b>	<b>4</b>
2.1	Worldsheet fields, action, and symmetries	4
2.1.1	Gauge symmetry of the ghost fields and gauge invariant composites	5
2.2	Chiral splitting	6
2.2.1	Homology invariance	8
2.2.2	Summary of the chiral splitting procedure	9
2.3	BRST transformations	10
2.4	Vertex operators	10
2.5	The $b$ -ghost	12
<b>3</b>	<b>Basics of genus-two amplitudes</b>	<b>13</b>
3.1	Genus-two correlators in the pure spinor formalism	13
3.1.1	Partition functions	13
3.1.2	Zero modes of $(1, 0)$ -form spinor fields	14
3.1.3	Zero modes of $(0, 0)$ -form spinor fields and pure spinor superspace	14
3.1.4	The zero-mode regulator	15
3.1.5	Wick contractions of non-zero-mode fields	16
3.1.6	The chiral correlator in pure spinor superspace	17
3.2	Zero mode counting	18
3.3	Zero modes absorbed by the $b$ -ghosts	19
3.4	The chiral amplitude for four external states	20
<b>4</b>	<b>Genus-two amplitudes for five massless states</b>	<b>22</b>
4.1	Structure of the chiral amplitude for five external states	22
4.1.1	Four $d$ -zero modes and one loop momentum from vertex operators	23
4.1.2	Four $d$ -zero modes and one Wick contraction from vertex operators	23
4.1.3	Contributions with five $d$ -zero modes from vertex operators	24
4.2	The vector block for the amplitude of five external states	25
4.3	Worldsheet dependence of the vector block	27
4.3.1	BRST transformation of $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V$	28
4.4	Construction of the scalar block	29
4.5	Scalar block in terms of two-particle superfields	30
4.5.1	Preamble	30
4.5.2	Two-particle superfield formalism	31
4.5.3	Two-particle superfields for the five-point function	32
4.5.4	The scalar block in terms of two-particle superfields	33

<b>5 Structure of the chiral amplitude</b>	<b>34</b>
5.1 Theta functions and symmetry on the Jacobian variety	34
5.2 Partition into sub-correlators	35
5.3 Manifesting homology invariance	37
5.4 Manifesting BRST invariance	38
5.5 Simultaneous homology invariance and BRST invariance	40
5.6 The simplified correlator in terms of prime forms	41
5.6.1 Comparison with the OPE correlator from [25]	42
5.7 An alternative correlator in terms of prime forms	43
<b>6 Type II and Heterotic 5-point amplitudes</b>	<b>44</b>
6.1 Assembling both chiralities for closed string amplitudes	44
6.2 Type II amplitudes	46
6.3 Heterotic string amplitudes	47
<b>7 The supergravity limit</b>	<b>50</b>
7.1 Maximal degeneration of a genus-two Riemann surface	52
7.2 Tropical limit of the Abelian differentials and prime form	53
7.3 Tropical limit of the chiral integrand: pentaboxes	56
7.4 Tropical limit of the Type II string integrand: double boxes	59
7.5 Assembling the supergravity amplitude	61
7.6 Comments on the Heterotic and Type I strings	62
<b>8 Conclusion and future directions</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>A Clifford-Dirac algebra and pure spinor identities</b>	<b>64</b>
A.1 Basic identities	64
A.2 Identities involving pure spinors	65
<b>B Functions and differentials on Riemann surfaces</b>	<b>66</b>
B.1 Homology and modular transformations	66
B.2 Holomorphic 1-forms and the period matrix	67
B.3 The Abel map and Jacobi $\vartheta$ -functions	67
B.4 The prime form	68
<b>C Chiral splitting and loop momenta</b>	<b>69</b>
<b>D Operator product expansions</b>	<b>71</b>

## 1 Introduction

The perturbative evaluation of superstring amplitudes in the Ramond-Neveu-Schwarz (RNS) formulation proceeds systematically from first principles (see for example [1–4] and references therein). Space-time supersymmetry is achieved in the RNS formulation by assembling the separate contributions from the NS and R sectors and integrating over super moduli which includes a sum over spin structures. By contrast, the pure spinor formulation [5–7] requires only an integral over bosonic moduli and is manifestly supersymmetric. It provides a streamlined approach to the evaluation of multi-particle superstring amplitudes with arbitrary external massless states (see for example [8, 9] and references therein). However, for genus three and greater, the pure spinor formulation faces the complication of a composite  $b$ -ghost whose presence is required to produce a suitable measure on moduli space. Various problems associated with the  $b$ -ghost and with the integration over pure spinor zero modes remain incompletely resolved to date.

While the explicit calculation of higher-genus amplitudes in superstring theory is of interest in its own right, it is also mainly motivated by the systematic study of the low energy effective interactions induced by string theory and the derivation of associated non-renormalization theorems, as well as by the exploration of the hidden structures of scattering amplitudes in quantum field theory through the  $\alpha' \rightarrow 0$  limit, such as the perturbative relations between gauge theories and supergravity. Another, more mathematical motivation is to gain a better understanding of the higher-genus modular forms that enter multi-loop string amplitudes.

The focus of this paper will be on genus-two amplitudes. In the RNS formulation, amplitudes receive contributions from even and odd spin structure sectors. The measure for the even spin structure sector was evaluated in [10–13] with the help of the canonical holomorphic projection of the genus-two even spin structure super moduli space onto moduli space. An alternative derivation of the measure using algebraic geometry methods was given more recently in [14, 15]. The genus-two amplitude for four external NS bosons was evaluated for both the Type II and Heterotic strings and is given by convergent integrals over the moduli space of genus-two compact Riemann surfaces, and integrals over each surface of combinations of Green functions in [16, 17]. The absolute normalization of the Type IIB amplitude and a comparison of its low energy expansion with the implications from S-duality were obtained in [18] with further results derived in [19, 20]. A general formulation for the even spin structure part of the genus-two amplitude for an arbitrary number of NS states was given using Dolbeault cohomology in [21], but no explicit formulas for amplitudes with more than 4 external states have been obtained in the RNS formulation yet.

The genus-two results for four massless states in Type II were reproduced soon after the RNS calculations using the pure spinor formulation, and extended to obtain the amplitudes involving external R states and thus external fermions [22]. Agreement with the results from RNS was verified in [23], including the precise normalization of the amplitude [24]. The pure spinor prescription was also applied to genus-two amplitudes with five external states in [25] and to genus-three amplitudes with four external states in [26]. In both

cases, finite expressions consistent with S-duality were obtained for the leading terms in the low energy expansion of these amplitudes. While for the genus-two amplitude with five external states the full expression will be derived below, the divergences in the zero-mode integrals of the bosonic ghosts pose difficulties when attempting the same for the genus-three amplitude.

In the present paper, we shall construct the genus-two amplitudes for five massless external states of the supergravity multiplet for Type II superstrings, and the supergravity or the super Yang-Mills multiplet for Heterotic strings. The extension to Type I superstrings is expected to follow from our construction as well but will not be considered in any detail here. We shall follow the prescription neither of the RNS formulation nor of the pure spinor formulation. Instead we shall combine ingredients of both formulations with properties of the corresponding maximal supergravity amplitudes. Specifically, we shall use the vertex operator BRST cohomology (see [27] and references therein) from the pure spinor formulation, and import the chiral splitting procedure and homology invariance properties of chiral amplitudes which were developed in the context of the RNS formulation [2, 28].

It will turn out that the construction via a combination of these ingredients produces unique amplitudes in the above theories in terms of integrals over the moduli space of compact Riemann surfaces and, for each surface, integrals over combinations of Green functions and meromorphic Abelian differentials. The integrals are convergent after analytic continuation in the external momenta, as is familiar from genus-one amplitudes [29].

Our key result is the construction of the chiral amplitude  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  which is a function of external momenta, chiral polarization vectors and spinors, loop momenta, and a complex analytic dependence on vertex operator points and moduli of the underlying compact Riemann surface  $\Sigma$ . The integration of the pairing of left and right chiral amplitudes over loop momenta, vertex operator points, and moduli gives the physical amplitude for five external states in the supergravity multiplet. For example, the Type II amplitudes take the form,

$$\mathcal{A}_{(5)} = \int \langle \mathcal{K}_{(5)} \bar{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)} \rangle_0 |\mathcal{I}_{(5)}|^2 \quad (1.1)$$

The integral encompasses moduli, vertex points, and loop momenta and includes the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor  $\mathcal{I}_{(5)}$ , as will be explained in detail in the sequel. Furthermore, the bracket  $\langle \dots \rangle_0$  denotes the prescription of the pure spinor formalism [5] to integrate over spinor zero modes, which extracts the power of  $\theta^5 \bar{\theta}^5$  from the enclosed superfields. The chiral amplitude  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  in (1.1) will be determined in a basis of holomorphic five-forms on  $\Sigma^5$ ,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)} = \Delta(3, 4)\Delta(5, 1)\omega_I(2)\mathcal{K}_{1,2,3|4,5}^I + \text{cycl}(1, 2, 3, 4, 5) \quad (1.2)$$

where  $\Delta(i, j)$  is the bi-holomorphic combination of holomorphic one-forms  $\omega_{1,2}$ ,

$$\Delta(i, j) = \omega_1(z_i)\omega_2(z_j) - \omega_2(z_i)\omega_1(z_j) \quad (1.3)$$

familiar from [16, 17]. All the dependence on the external polarization vectors and spinors

is captured by the coefficients  $\mathcal{K}_{1,2,3|4,5}^I$  which are scalar functions on  $\Sigma^5$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{K}_{1,2,3|4,5}^I = & 2\pi p_m^I T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m - g_{2,3}^I T_{23,1|4,5} - g_{2,1}^I T_{21,3|4,5} - g_{3,1}^I T_{31,2|4,5} \\ & - g_{2,4}^I S_{2;4|5|1,2} - g_{3,4}^I S_{3;4|5|2,1} - g_{1,4}^I S_{1;4|5|2,3} \\ & - g_{2,5}^I S_{2;5|4|3,1} - g_{3,5}^I S_{3;5|4|2,1} - g_{1,5}^I S_{1;5|4|2,1} \end{aligned} \quad (1.4)$$

The dependence on the loop momenta  $p_m^I$  is explicit in (1.4), while the dependence on vertex positions and moduli enters through the following combinations of theta functions,

$$g_{i,j}^I = \frac{\partial}{\partial \zeta_I} \ln \vartheta[\nu](\zeta|\Omega) \quad \text{for} \quad \zeta_I = \int_{z_j}^{z_i} \omega_I \quad (1.5)$$

The choice of odd spin structure  $\nu$  is immaterial as long as it is the same for all terms in (1.4). The kinematic factors  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m, T_{23,1|4,5}, S_{2;4|5|1,2}$  in pure spinor superspace will be developed below, giving access to arbitrary combinations of external states from the massless supersymmetry multiplets. These kinematic factors are independent of moduli, vertex points, and loop momenta.

Our construction of the chiral amplitude  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  in this paper does not proceed directly from first principles, and it is therefore important to carry out consistency checks to confirm its validity. A first check consists in showing that those terms of the chiral amplitude which have singularities at coincident vertex points agree with the OPEs derived from first principles in [25]. A second check consists of comparing the  $\alpha' \rightarrow 0$  limit of the Type II superstring amplitudes with the predictions from the corresponding maximal supergravity calculations. Both checks will be carried out in this paper and demonstrate perfect agreement.

As further checks, the investigation of the low energy expansion of the amplitude for five external states in Type II string theory and the comparison with predictions from S-duality, carried out in [25] to lowest order, will be extended to higher orders in a companion paper [30]. Finally, the genus-two amplitude for five external NS bosons will be evaluated through the RNS formalism in another companion paper [31], where its form will be compared with the amplitude obtained here.

**Organization.** The remainder of this paper is organized as follows. In section 2 we review and summarize the required key ingredients of the non-minimal pure spinor formulation, its BRST cohomology, its zero-mode counting, and its vertex operators, as well as the chiral splitting procedure applied to pure spinors. Section 3 briefly reviews selected aspects of multi-loop computations in the pure spinor formalism and the derivation of the amplitude with four external massless states. In section 4, we make use of BRST cohomology and chiral splitting to construct a chiral amplitude with five external massless states. In section 5 we shall recast this result in various alternative representations which make manifest Bose and Fermi symmetry, homology invariance, BRST invariance, and short distance singularities. In section 6 we continue to use the results of chiral splitting to assemble left and right moving chiral blocks into the full amplitudes for five external states in the Type II and Heterotic strings. In section 7 we check the worldline limit of our results

to reproduce the loop integrand of the two-loop five-point amplitude in supergravity. In section 8 we conclude and offer a perspective on some future directions of investigation.

Various identities for the Clifford-Dirac algebra and pure spinors are collected in appendix A; basics ingredients of Riemann surfaces and their function theory are summarized in appendix B; a detailed derivation of the chiral splitting procedure suitable for the pure spinor formulation is presented in appendix C; and the operator product expansions of the pure spinor worldsheet fields are gathered in appendix D.

## Acknowledgments

We are grateful to Piotr Tourkine for helpful discussions on the tropical limit and to Nicholas Geiser for useful comments on the manuscript. The research of ED is supported in part by NSF grant PHY-19-14412. BP and OS are grateful to UCLA and the Mani Bhaumik Institute for kind hospitality and creating a stimulating atmosphere during initial stages of this work. CRM is supported by a University Research Fellowship from the Royal Society. OS is supported by the European Research Council under ERC-STG-804286 UNISCAMP.

## 2 Pure spinors and chiral splitting

In this section we derive the basic building blocks for the five-point amplitude in terms of the BRST cohomology of the pure spinor superstring and the chiral splitting procedure. The source of these building blocks may be found in the non-minimal pure spinor superstring, whose formulation is suited to two-loop calculations in view of the presence of its *b*-ghost. Salient features of the non-minimal pure spinor superstring may be found in [7]. Throughout, we assume Euclidean signature both on the worldsheet and in target space.

### 2.1 Worldsheet fields, action, and symmetries

The fields of the non-minimal pure spinor superstring on the worldsheet  $\Sigma$  are the worldsheet scalar  $x^m$  with  $m = 1, \dots, 10$ ; the left-moving worldsheet scalars  $\theta^\alpha, \lambda^\alpha, \bar{\lambda}_\alpha, r_\alpha$  with  $\alpha = 1, \dots, 16$ ; the left-moving worldsheet  $(1,0)$ -forms  $p_\alpha, w_\alpha, \bar{w}^\alpha, s^\alpha$ ; and their right-moving counterparts suitable either for the Type II or Heterotic strings. Despite the notation, the fields  $\lambda^\alpha, \bar{\lambda}_\alpha$  and  $w_\alpha, \bar{w}^\alpha$  are not complex conjugates of one another, but independent fields transforming under conjugate representations of the Lorentz group. Under the  $SO(10)$  Lorentz group, the field  $x^m$  transforms as a vector;  $\theta^\alpha, \lambda^\alpha, \bar{w}^\alpha, s^\alpha$  transform as Weyl spinors in the **16** of  $SO(10)$ ; and  $p_\alpha, w_\alpha, \bar{\lambda}_\alpha, r_\alpha$  transform as Weyl spinors in the **16'**. The fields  $\theta^\alpha, p_\alpha$  are anti-commuting matter fields while  $\lambda^\alpha, \bar{\lambda}_\alpha, w_\alpha, \bar{w}^\alpha$  are commuting ghosts, and  $s^\alpha, r_\alpha$  are anti-commuting spinor ghosts. The pure spinor constraints on the ghost fields are,

$$\lambda \gamma^m \lambda = \bar{\lambda} \gamma^m \bar{\lambda} = \bar{\lambda} \gamma^m r = 0 \quad (2.1)$$

These identities are invariant under  $SO(10)$  and reduce the number of independent components of each field  $\lambda^\alpha, \bar{\lambda}_\alpha, r_\alpha$  from 16 to 11 in an  $SO(10)$ -invariant way.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>This counting may be seen explicitly by decomposing the fields under the  $U(5)$  maximal subgroup of  $SO(10)$  under which the spinor representation **16** decomposes into the representations **1**  $\oplus$  **5**\*  $\oplus$  **10** of  $SU(5)$ .

The action for  $x^m$  and the left-moving worldsheet fields is given by,<sup>2</sup>

$$I = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\Sigma} \left( \frac{1}{2} \partial x^m \bar{\partial} x_m + p_{\alpha} \bar{\partial} \theta^{\alpha} - w_{\alpha} \bar{\partial} \lambda^{\alpha} - \bar{w}^{\alpha} \bar{\partial} \bar{\lambda}_{\alpha} + s^{\alpha} \bar{\partial} r_{\alpha} \right) \quad (2.2)$$

The action  $I$  is invariant under global Lorentz transformations of  $\text{SO}(10)$ . It is also invariant under global supersymmetry transformations which are generated by a constant spinor  $\epsilon^{\alpha}$ ,

$$\delta x^m = -\frac{1}{2} \epsilon \gamma^m \theta \quad \delta \theta^{\alpha} = \epsilon^{\alpha} \quad (2.3)$$

The corresponding translation and supersymmetry currents are given by,

$$\begin{aligned} \Pi^m &= \partial x^m + \frac{1}{2} \theta \gamma^m \partial \theta \\ d_{\alpha} &= p_{\alpha} - \frac{1}{2} \partial x^m (\gamma_m \theta)_{\alpha} - \frac{1}{8} (\theta \gamma^m \partial \theta) (\gamma_m \theta)_{\alpha} \end{aligned} \quad (2.4)$$

Both currents are invariant under supersymmetry. The stress tensor is given by,

$$T_{\text{tot}} = -\frac{1}{2} \partial x^m \partial x_m - p_{\alpha} \partial \theta^{\alpha} + w_{\alpha} \partial \lambda^{\alpha} + \bar{w}^{\alpha} \partial \bar{\lambda}_{\alpha} - s^{\alpha} \partial r_{\alpha} \quad (2.5)$$

The matter fields  $x^m, \theta^{\alpha}, p_{\alpha}$  are unconstrained free fields while the ghost fields are subject to the pure spinor constraints (2.1). It will often be convenient to use the field  $d_{\alpha}$  instead of  $p_{\alpha}$  by carrying out the field-dependent shift in (2.4). The 16 components of the spinor  $d_{\alpha}$  are unconstrained. The operator product relations are given in appendix D.

### 2.1.1 Gauge symmetry of the ghost fields and gauge invariant composites

In view of the pure spinor constraints (2.1) on  $\lambda^{\alpha}, \bar{\lambda}_{\alpha}, r_{\alpha}$ , their respective conjugates  $w_{\alpha}, \bar{w}^{\alpha}, s^{\alpha}$  are subject to gauge transformations,

$$\begin{aligned} \delta w_{\alpha} &= \Lambda_m (\gamma^m \lambda)_{\alpha} \\ \delta \bar{w}^{\alpha} &= \bar{\Lambda}_m (\gamma^m \bar{\lambda})^{\alpha} - \phi_m (\gamma^m r)^{\alpha} \\ \delta s^{\alpha} &= \phi_m (\gamma^m \bar{\lambda})^{\alpha} \end{aligned} \quad (2.6)$$

which leave the action  $I$  invariant for arbitrary commuting  $\Lambda_m, \bar{\Lambda}_m$  and anti-commuting  $\phi_m$  functions on  $\Sigma$ . As a result, the number of fields  $w_{\alpha}, \bar{w}^{\alpha}, s^{\alpha}$  modulo gauge transformations is reduced from 16 to 11 for each field. Linear combinations of  $w_{\alpha}, \bar{w}^{\alpha}, s^{\alpha}$  (with  $\lambda$  and

---

The constraints (2.1) are responsible for projecting out the representation  $\mathbf{5}^*$  from each field, leaving 11 independent components for each one of the fields  $\lambda^{\alpha}, \bar{\lambda}_{\alpha}$  and  $r_{\alpha}$ . Basic identities for the  $16 \times 16$  Clifford-Dirac  $\gamma$ -matrices and pure spinor identities are given in appendix A.

<sup>2</sup>Throughout, we shall set  $\alpha' = 2$  and use local complex coordinates  $z, \bar{z}$  on  $\Sigma$  with  $\partial = \partial/\partial z, \bar{\partial} = \partial/\partial \bar{z}$ . The fields  $p_{\alpha}, w_{\alpha}, \bar{w}^{\alpha}, s^{\alpha}$  will denote the coefficients of the differential  $dz$  of their corresponding  $(1,0)$  form fields expressed in local coordinates. The coordinate volume form on  $\Sigma$  is  $d^2z = \frac{i}{2} dz \wedge d\bar{z}$ . When no confusion is expected to arise, the integral of a  $(1,1)$ -form  $v d^2z$  on  $\Sigma$  will be denoted in shorthand by  $\int_{\Sigma} v d^2z \rightarrow \int_{\Sigma} v$ , while the integral of a  $(1,0)$  form  $\omega dz$  along a curve  $\mathcal{C}$  will be denoted  $\int_{\mathcal{C}} \omega dz \rightarrow \int_{\mathcal{C}} \omega$ .

$\bar{\lambda}$ -valued coefficients) that are invariant under these gauge transformations are given by,

$$\begin{aligned} N_{mn} &= \frac{1}{2}w\gamma_{mn}\lambda & J &= w\lambda \\ \bar{N}_{mn} &= \frac{1}{2}(\bar{w}\gamma_{mn}\bar{\lambda} - s\gamma_{mn}r) & \bar{J} &= \bar{w}\bar{\lambda} - sr \\ S_{mn} &= \frac{1}{2}s\gamma_{mn}\bar{\lambda} & S &= s\bar{\lambda} \end{aligned} \quad (2.7)$$

The composites  $N_{mn}, \bar{N}_{mn}$  are the SO(10) currents of the ghost fields  $\lambda^\alpha, w_\alpha, \bar{\lambda}_\alpha, \bar{w}^\alpha, s^\alpha, r_\alpha$ , while  $J, \bar{J}$  are U(1) currents. The ghost number current is defined by,

$$J_{\text{gh}} = w\lambda - \bar{w}\bar{\lambda} \quad (2.8)$$

so that  $\lambda, \bar{w}$  have ghost number +1 and  $w, \bar{\lambda}$  have ghost number -1 while all other fields, including the composites  $\Pi^m, d_\alpha$ , and  $T_{\text{tot}}$ , have zero ghost number. The partial stress tensors  $T_\lambda = w\partial\lambda$  and  $T_{\bar{\lambda}} = \bar{w}\partial\bar{\lambda} - s\partial r$  are also invariant but will not be needed here.

In view of the pure spinor constraints (2.1), only 11 amongst the fields  $(N_{mn}, J)$  are linearly independent of one another (with  $\lambda$ -valued coefficients), and similarly only 11 amongst  $(\bar{N}_{mn}, \bar{J})$  and 11 amongst  $(S_{mn}, S)$  are linearly independent (with  $\bar{\lambda}$ -valued coefficients).

## 2.2 Chiral splitting

The spinor-valued fields in the non-minimal pure spinor formulation,  $\theta^\alpha, p_\alpha, \lambda^\alpha, w_\alpha, \bar{\lambda}_\alpha, \bar{w}^\alpha, r_\alpha$ , and  $s^\alpha$ , are conformal primary fields whose correlators on a Riemann surface  $\Sigma$  of arbitrary genus  $h$  are complex analytic on  $\Sigma$  and on moduli. The vector-valued field  $x^m$ , however, is not a conformal primary due to the presence of translational zero modes. As a result the inverse of the scalar Laplacian on the space orthogonal to the zero mode depends on certain choices, including the volume form on  $\Sigma$ . Choosing the volume form to be the canonical Kähler form of unit volume (with  $Y^{IJ}$  denoting the entries of the inverse of  $Y = \text{Im } \Omega$ ),<sup>3</sup>

$$\kappa(z) = \frac{i}{4}Y^{IJ}\omega_I(z) \wedge \bar{\omega}_J(z) = \frac{i}{2}\kappa_{z\bar{z}}dz \wedge d\bar{z} \quad (2.9)$$

the inverse of the scalar Laplacian on the space orthogonal to the zero mode gives the Arakelov Green function  $\mathcal{G}$  which satisfies,

$$\partial_z \bar{\partial}_{\bar{z}} \mathcal{G}(z, w|\Omega) = -\pi\delta^{(2)}(z, w) + \pi\kappa_{z\bar{z}}(z) \quad \int_{\Sigma} \mathcal{G}(z, w|\Omega)\kappa(w) = 0 \quad (2.10)$$

The Arakelov Green function is globally well-defined, symmetric in  $z, w$ , invariant under conformal transformations, and gives the two-point function of  $x^m$  as follows  $\langle x^m(z)x^n(w) \rangle = \eta^{mn}\mathcal{G}(z, w|\Omega)$ . The Arakelov Green function is related to the more familiar “string Green function”,

$$G(z, w|\Omega) = -\ln |E(z, w|\Omega)|^2 + 2\pi Y^{IJ} \left( \text{Im} \int_w^z \omega_I \right) \left( \text{Im} \int_w^z \omega_J \right) \quad (2.11)$$

---

<sup>3</sup>A summary of function theory on compact Riemann surfaces, including the definitions of meromorphic differentials, Jacobi theta-functions, and the prime form, is given in appendix B. Throughout, we shall use the Einstein convention for the summation over pairs of repeated upper and lower indices  $I, J = 1, \dots, h$ , where  $h$  is the genus, which we keep general in this section.

via a shift

$$\mathcal{G}(z, w|\Omega) = G(z, w|\Omega) - \gamma(z|\Omega) - \gamma(w|\Omega) \quad (2.12)$$

where

$$\gamma(z|\Omega) = \int_{\Sigma} G(z, w|\Omega) \kappa(w) - \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Sigma \times \Sigma} \kappa(w) G(w, w'|\Omega) \kappa(w') \quad (2.13)$$

Unlike  $\mathcal{G}(z, w|\Omega)$ , the string Green function  $G(z, w|\Omega)$  depends on a choice of local coordinates, due to the fact that  $E(z, w|\Omega)$  is a form of weight  $(-\frac{1}{2}, 0)$  in  $z$  and  $w$ , and is not globally well-defined on  $\Sigma$ . However, the difference  $\mathcal{G}(z, w|\Omega) - G(z, w|\Omega)$  cancels from correlators upon imposing momentum conservation, so we may equally well use the two-point function  $\langle x^m(z) x^n(w) \rangle = \eta^{mn} G(z, w|\Omega)$  in computing correlators of  $x^m$ . The use of the Arakelov Green function will be especially important when carrying out a low-energy expansion of the amplitudes and guarantees that individual terms are properly conformal invariant [32, 33].

By contrast, the field  $\partial x^m(z)$  is a  $(1, 0)$  form and conformal primary field. Its correlators are meromorphic on  $\Sigma$ , as may be seen from the two-point function  $\langle \partial x^m(z) \partial x^n(w) \rangle = \eta^{mn} \partial_z \partial_w G(z, w|\Omega) = \eta^{mn} \partial_z \partial_w \mathcal{G}(z, w|\Omega)$  with,

$$\partial_z \partial_w G(z, w|\Omega) = -\partial_z \partial_w \ln E(z, w|\Omega) + \pi Y^{IJ} \omega_I(z) \omega_J(w) \quad (2.14)$$

Note that neither the Green functions  $G, \mathcal{G}$  nor their derivatives  $\partial_z \partial_w G$  are complex analytic in the moduli  $\Omega$ , as evident from the presence of  $Y^{IJ}$  in (2.14).

The chiral splitting procedure [2, 28, 34] introduces loop momenta to re-express conformal correlators of the  $x^m$ -field in terms of an integral over loop momenta whose integrand is a product of left and right chiral blocks. Each chiral conformal block is complex analytic in the vertex points on  $\Sigma$  and in the moduli of  $\Sigma$ . Chiral conformal blocks have a universal monodromy behavior as the points are moved around one another and/or moved around the homology cycles of  $\Sigma$ . The chiral splitting procedure is a key ingredient in the evaluation of the genus-two measure and four-point amplitudes in the RNS formulation [3, 10, 16].

The momentum flowing through a simple closed cycle  $\mathcal{C}$  on  $\Sigma$  is given by the integral along  $\mathcal{C}$  of the space-time translation current  $\partial x^m(z)$  and is dubbed the loop momentum through  $\mathcal{C}$ . On a surface of genus  $h$ , there are  $h$  independent loop momenta, which we shall denote by  $(p^I)^m$  with  $I = 1, \dots, h$  (not to be confused with the spinor field  $p_\alpha$  of (2.2)). The choice of their routing is not unique but may be fixed canonically to the cycles  $\mathfrak{A}_I$  given a choice of canonical homology basis  $\mathfrak{A}_I, \mathfrak{B}_I$ ,

$$(p^I)^m = \frac{1}{2\pi} \oint_{\mathfrak{A}_I} \partial x^m \quad I = 1, \dots, h \quad (2.15)$$

The normalization is fixed to reproduce the momentum flowing through a cylinder.

The construction of the chiral blocks for the correlators of the field  $\partial x^m$  and the exponential  $e^{ik \cdot x}$  is formulated in terms of a set of effective rules, starting from a generating function for  $N$ -point  $x^m$  correlators (see appendix C for a detailed derivation),

$$\mathcal{J} = \int Dx \exp \left\{ -\frac{1}{4\pi} \int_{\Sigma} \partial x \cdot \bar{\partial} x + \sum_{j=1}^N \left( ik_j \cdot x(z_j) + \varepsilon_j \cdot \partial x(z_j) + \bar{\eta}_j \cdot \bar{\partial} x(z_j) \right) \right\} \quad (2.16)$$

Throughout we shall assume that the incoming momenta  $k_j$  and the polarization vectors  $\varepsilon_j$  and  $\eta_j$  are complex-valued and satisfy  $k_j^2 = k_j \cdot \varepsilon_j = k_j \cdot \eta_j = 0$  for all  $j = 1, \dots, N$  and that the total momentum  $\sum_{j=1}^N k_j$  vanishes. We shall also assume that the coefficients  $\varepsilon_j$  and  $\eta_j$  are independent of one another so that, at a given point  $z_j$ , either  $\varepsilon_j$  or  $\eta_j$  or both may vanish independently. The functional integral will be understood as a generating function for correlators which are linear in each  $\varepsilon_j \cdot \partial x(z_j)$  and  $\bar{\eta}_j \cdot \bar{\partial} x(z_j)$  so that terms of quadratic order and higher in a given  $\varepsilon_j$  or  $\eta_j$  will never be needed.

It is shown in appendix C that  $\mathcal{J}$  may be obtained as an integral over loop momenta  $p_I^m$  of a pairing of chiral conformal blocks,

$$\mathcal{J} = \delta \left( \sum_{j=1}^N k_j \right) \int_{\mathbb{R}^{10h}} dp \mathcal{B}(z_i, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) \overline{\mathcal{B}(z_i, \eta_i, -k_i^*, -p^I | \Omega)} \quad (2.17)$$

where the chiral block is given by,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{B}(z_i, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) &= \mathcal{B}_0(z_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) \left\langle \exp \sum_{j=1}^N \left\{ \varepsilon_j \cdot \left( \partial_z x_+ + 2\pi p^I \omega_I \right) + ik_j \cdot x_+ \right\} (z_j) \right\rangle \\ \mathcal{B}_0(z_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) &= Z(\Omega)^{-10} \exp \left\{ i\pi \Omega_{IJ} p^I \cdot p^J + \sum_{j=1}^N 2\pi i p^I \cdot k_j \int_{z_0}^{z_j} \omega_I \right\} \end{aligned} \quad (2.18)$$

Note that the dependence on the base point  $z_0$  drops out by momentum conservation. The chiral scalar partition function  $Z(\Omega)$  is holomorphic in  $\Omega$ . It may be evaluated using chiral bosonization [35] and is given explicitly in terms of  $\vartheta$ -functions for genus two in [13], however its form will not be needed in this work. The field  $x_+^m$  is an effective chiral scalar field whose Wick contraction rule is given by,

$$\langle x_+^m(z) x_+^n(w) \rangle = -\eta^{mn} \ln E(z, w | \Omega) \quad (2.19)$$

Recall that the field  $x_+^m$  is not a conformal primary field, a property which is reflected in the non-trivial monodromy of the above correlator as  $z$  and  $w$  are swapped and as they are moved around non-trivial homology cycles.

### 2.2.1 Homology invariance

The chiral field  $x_+^m(z)$  and, as a result, the chiral blocks  $\mathcal{B}$  have non-trivial monodromy as a point  $z_i$  is taken around a homology cycle of the surface. The corresponding transformations are familiar from the chiral splitting procedure [28],

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{B}(z_i + \delta_{ij} \mathfrak{A}_J, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) &= e^{2\pi i p_J \cdot k_j} \mathcal{B}(z_i, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) \\ \mathcal{B}(z_i + \delta_{ij} \mathfrak{B}_J, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) &= \mathcal{B}(z_i, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I + \delta_J^I k_j | \Omega) \end{aligned} \quad (2.20)$$

These monodromy transformations are universal in the sense that they are the same for the chiral blocks of the bosonic string, the Type II string, and the Heterotic strings. In the RNS formulation, they hold for each spin structure separately [28].

Alternatively, we may interpret the monodromy relations of (2.20) as an invariance under a suitable action of the homology group of  $\Sigma$  on the chiral blocks, to which we shall refer as “homology invariance” for short. To do so, we consider a representation  $\mathcal{R}$  of the homology group  $H_1(\Sigma, \mathbb{Z})$  acting on both the vertex points  $z_j$  and the loop momenta  $p^I$ , defined by the following transformations on the chiral block  $\mathcal{B}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{R}(z_j, \mathfrak{A}_J) \mathcal{B}(z_i, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) &= e^{-2\pi i p_J \cdot k_j} \mathcal{B}(z_i + \delta_{ij} \mathfrak{A}_J, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) \\ \mathcal{R}(z_j, \mathfrak{B}_J) \mathcal{B}(z_i, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) &= \mathcal{B}(z_i + \delta_{ij} \mathfrak{B}_J, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I - \delta_J^I k_j | \Omega)\end{aligned}\quad (2.21)$$

These transformations mutually commute for arbitrary pairs of  $(j, J)$ , in agreement with the Abelian nature of the homology group. The transformation laws of (2.20) are then equivalent to the invariance of  $\mathcal{B}$  under the action of  $\mathcal{R}$ ,

$$\mathcal{R}(z_j, \mathfrak{A}_J) \mathcal{B} = \mathcal{R}(z_j, \mathfrak{B}_J) \mathcal{B} = \mathcal{B} \quad (2.22)$$

The full generating function  $\mathcal{J}$  of (2.16), obtained by assembling the factors of left and right chirality is, of course, invariant under these transformations. Upon integration over loop momenta the resulting correlator is single-valued in the vertex points  $z_i$  thanks to the translation invariance of the loop momentum integration measure  $dp$  and its domain  $\mathbb{R}^{10h}$ .

### 2.2.2 Summary of the chiral splitting procedure

The chiral splitting procedure may be summarized by the following prescriptions,

1. Carrying out the following replacements,

$$e^{ik \cdot x} \rightarrow e^{ik \cdot x_+} \quad \partial x^m(z) \rightarrow \partial x_+^m(z) + 2\pi(p^I)^m \omega_I(z) \quad (2.23)$$

2. Wick contracting the chiral field  $x_+^m$  using (2.19);
3. Including the factor  $\mathcal{B}_0(z_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega)$  defined in (2.18);
4. Integrating over all loop momenta of the paired chiral blocks in (2.17).

Henceforth, we shall assume that these effective rules are used whenever the fields  $\partial x^m$  or  $e^{ik \cdot x}$  occur. For example, to construct a chiral block involving the composite field  $\Pi^m$  defined in (2.4) we shall perform the following substitution,<sup>4</sup>

$$\Pi^m \rightarrow \partial x_+^m + \frac{1}{2} \theta \gamma^m \partial \theta + 2\pi(p^I)^m \omega_I \quad (2.24)$$

and then carry out the Wick contractions of the field  $x_+^m$  using (2.19). To simplify notations until the evaluation of the chiral block is needed, however, we shall retain the notations  $\partial x^m$  and  $e^{ik \cdot x}$  at intermediate stages of the evaluations. Henceforth the dependence on moduli through  $\Omega$  will be understood but no longer exhibited.

---

<sup>4</sup>Note that the field  $\partial x^m$  also enters in the relation between the fields  $p_\alpha$  and  $d_\alpha$  in (2.4). Since throughout we will work exclusively in terms of the field  $d_\alpha$ , this occurrence of  $\partial x^m$  will be immaterial.

### 2.3 BRST transformations

The BRST charge  $Q$  of the non-minimal pure spinor formalism has ghost number 1 and is given by [7],

$$Q = \oint (\lambda^\alpha d_\alpha + \bar{w}^\alpha r_\alpha) \quad (2.25)$$

The operator product expansion of the worldsheet fields, given in appendix D, may be used to evaluate their BRST transformation, and we have,<sup>5</sup>

$$\begin{aligned} Q x^m &= \frac{1}{2} \lambda \gamma^m \theta & Q \lambda^\alpha &= 0 \\ Q \theta^\alpha &= \lambda^\alpha & Q \bar{\lambda}_\alpha &= r_\alpha \\ Q d_\alpha &= -(\lambda \gamma^m)_\alpha \Pi_m & Q r_\alpha &= 0 \\ Q \Pi^m &= \lambda \gamma^m \partial \theta & Q N_{mn} &= -\frac{1}{2} (d \gamma_{mn} \lambda) \end{aligned} \quad (2.26)$$

With the help of the pure spinor constraints (2.1) it may be verified that the relation,

$$Q^2 = 0 \quad (2.27)$$

is properly realized on all fields. The BRST transformations of  $w_\alpha, \bar{w}^\alpha$ , and  $s^\alpha$  are not invariant under the gauge transformations (2.6) and will not be needed, other than in the gauge invariant combination  $N_{mn}$ . Throughout, the field  $p_\alpha$  will be traded for the supersymmetry current  $d_\alpha$ , which is simply related to it by a shift given in (2.4). A convenient unified expression may be derived from (2.26) for the BRST transformation of any local function  $f(x, \theta)$ , which depends only on  $x$  and  $\theta$  but not on their worldsheet derivatives,

$$Qf(x, \theta) = \lambda^\alpha D_\alpha f(x, \theta) \quad (2.28)$$

where  $D_\alpha$  is the super derivative defined by,

$$D_\alpha = \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta^\alpha} + \frac{1}{2} \gamma_{\alpha\beta}^m \theta^\beta \frac{\partial}{\partial x^m} \quad \{D_\alpha, D_\beta\} = \gamma_{\alpha\beta}^m \partial_m \quad (2.29)$$

where we use the standard notation  $\partial_m = \partial/\partial x^m$ .

### 2.4 Vertex operators

Vertex operators for massless physical states are constructed from the plane wave solutions to the linearized 10-dimensional super-Yang-Mills and supergravity equations. The spinor part of the vertex operators is chirally split as it stands, and the chiral splitting for the  $x^m$  field will be carried out in the subsequent section. The chiral vertex operators involve chiral spinor fields and the 10-dimensional super Yang-Mills multiplet and are governed by the linearized 10-dimensional super Yang-Mills equations. The fields of the super-multiplet

---

<sup>5</sup>Throughout, we shall use standard CFT notation and write  $Qf$  instead of  $[Q, f]$  or  $\{Q, f\}$  for the BRST transformation of a bosonic or fermionic field  $f$ , respectively.

$(A_\alpha, A_m, W^\alpha, F_{mn})$  satisfy the following equations,<sup>6</sup>

$$\begin{aligned} D_\alpha A_\beta + D_\beta A_\alpha &= \gamma_{\alpha\beta}^m A_m & D_\alpha W^\beta &= \frac{1}{4}(\gamma^{mn})_\alpha^\beta F_{mn} \\ D_\alpha A_m - \partial_m A_\alpha &= (\gamma_m)_{\alpha\beta} W^\beta & D_\alpha F_{mn} &= (\partial_m \gamma_n - \partial_n \gamma_m)_{\alpha\beta} W^\beta \end{aligned} \quad (2.30)$$

For later use, we record the field equation and Bianchi identity for  $W^\alpha$ ,

$$\gamma^m \partial_m W^\alpha = 0 \quad D_\alpha W^\alpha = 0 \quad (2.31)$$

The fields  $A_m$ ,  $W^\alpha$ , and  $F_{mn}$  may be expressed in terms of the field  $A_\alpha$  which has odd grading. A plane wave solution with momentum  $k$  is given in the gauge  $\theta^\alpha A_\alpha = 0$  by [37–39],

$$A_\alpha(x, \theta) = \left( \frac{1}{2} \varepsilon^m (\gamma_m \theta)_\alpha - \frac{1}{3} (\chi \gamma^m \theta) (\gamma_m \theta)_\alpha + \dots \right) e^{ik \cdot x} \quad (2.32)$$

where the ellipses stand for terms with higher powers of  $\theta$ . The parameters  $\varepsilon$  and  $\chi$  are the polarization vector and spinor, respectively. For massless external states we have  $k^2 = 0$  and  $k \cdot \varepsilon = k \cdot \gamma \chi = 0$ . The dependence of the SYM fields on  $k, \varepsilon, \chi$  will be suppressed throughout.

Vertex operators for physical massless states are built out of chiral vertex operators times their conjugates. A chiral vertex operator is a  $(1, 0)$  form on the worldsheet which is BRST invariant up to an exact differential. To construct such vertex operators, we begin by obtaining the BRST variations of the linearized SYM fields,

$$\begin{aligned} Q A_\alpha &= \lambda^\beta D_\beta A_\alpha \\ Q W^\alpha &= \frac{1}{4} (\lambda \gamma^{mn})^\alpha F_{mn} \\ Q A_m &= (\lambda \gamma_m W) + \lambda^\beta \partial_m A_\beta \\ Q F_{mn} &= (\lambda \gamma_n \partial_m W) - (\lambda \gamma_m \partial_n W) \end{aligned} \quad (2.33)$$

Some immediate consequences for composites, to be of later use, are as follows,

$$\begin{aligned} Q(\lambda \gamma^m W) &= 0 \\ Q(\lambda \gamma^{mn} \gamma^r W) &= -\frac{1}{4} (\lambda \gamma^{mnpqr} \lambda) F_{pq} \\ Q(\lambda \gamma^{mnpqr} \lambda) F_{mn} &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (2.34)$$

The un-integrated vertex operator  $V$  is a worldsheet  $(0, 0)$  form of ghost number 1 given by,

$$V = \lambda^\alpha A_\alpha(x, \theta) \quad (2.35)$$

It satisfies  $QV = 0$  in view of the pure spinor constraint on  $\lambda$ . The integrated vertex operator  $U$  is a worldsheet  $(1, 0)$ -form of ghost number 0 which is built out of the basic

---

<sup>6</sup>The field equations of linearized 10-dimensional super Yang-Mills theory [36] may be expressed in terms of the covariant derivatives  $\mathcal{D}_\alpha = D_\alpha + A_\alpha$  and  $\mathcal{D}_m = \partial_m + A_m$  subject to gauge transformations  $\delta A_\alpha = D_\alpha \mathfrak{A}$ ,  $\delta A_m = \partial_m \mathfrak{A}$ , the Jacobi identities, and the superspace torsion constraint  $F_{\alpha\beta} = \{\mathcal{D}_\alpha, \mathcal{D}_\beta\} - \gamma_{\alpha\beta}^m \mathcal{D}_m = 0$ . The field strengths  $F_{\alpha m} = [\mathcal{D}_\alpha, \mathcal{D}_m]$  and  $F_{mn} = \partial_m A_n - \partial_n A_m$  satisfy (2.30) with  $F_{\alpha m} = (\gamma_m)_{\alpha\beta} W^\beta$ .

$(1,0)$ -forms  $\partial\theta^\alpha, \Pi^m, d_\alpha, N_{mn}$  times the corresponding linearized on-shell SYM field and is given by,

$$U = \partial\theta^\alpha A_\alpha(x, \theta) + \Pi^m A_m(x, \theta) + d_\alpha W^\alpha(x, \theta) + \frac{1}{2} N_{mn} F^{mn}(x, \theta) \quad (2.36)$$

Its BRST variation is a total derivative of the un-integrated vertex  $V$ ,

$$QU = \partial V \quad (2.37)$$

so that the integrals of  $U\bar{U}$  over a closed worldsheet and  $U$  over a worldsheet boundary are BRST invariant.

## 2.5 The $b$ -ghost

The RNS superstring naturally has a  $(b, c)$  anti-commuting ghost system which results from gauge fixing worldsheet diffeomorphism symmetry, and a  $(\beta, \gamma)$  commuting ghost system resulting from gauge fixing worldsheet local supersymmetry. The existence of an un-gauged-fixed formulation for the pure spinor superstring with a canonical  $(b, c)$  ghost system is currently still under investigation [40, 41]. The non-minimal formulation of the pure spinor string was developed to produce a composite  $b$ -ghost [7], without requiring a  $c$ -ghost companion. It is this formulation that we shall use here as a guide for the construction of the amplitude for five external states.

The key principle for the construction of the  $b$ -ghost is that it must be an anti-commuting Lorentz scalar, and a  $(2, 0)$ -form on the worldsheet  $\Sigma$  whose BRST transform is the chiral stress tensor  $T_{\text{tot}}$  which was given in (2.5),

$$Q b = T_{\text{tot}} \quad (2.38)$$

Since  $Q$  and  $T_{\text{tot}}$  have ghost number 1 and 0, respectively,  $b$  must have ghost number  $-1$ . There is no canonical gauge-invariant field satisfying these conditions. However, there is a ghost number 0 composite spinor  $G^\alpha$  given by,

$$G^\alpha = \frac{1}{2} \Pi_m (\gamma^m d)^\alpha - \frac{1}{4} N_{mn} (\gamma^{mn} \partial\theta)^\alpha - \frac{1}{4} J_\lambda \partial\theta^\alpha - \frac{1}{4} \partial^2 \theta^\alpha \quad (2.39)$$

whose BRST transform is proportional to the stress tensor,

$$Q G^\alpha = \lambda^\alpha T_{\text{tot}} \quad (2.40)$$

The ghost field  $\bar{\lambda}^\alpha$  of the non-minimal pure spinor string allows one to formally solve (2.38) for the  $b$ -ghost using the descent equations of BRST cohomology. The resulting  $b$ -ghost field is unique, up to BRST closed contributions, and given by [7],

$$\begin{aligned} b = & s^\alpha \partial \bar{\lambda}_\alpha + \frac{\bar{\lambda}_\alpha G^\alpha}{(\lambda \bar{\lambda})} + \frac{(\bar{\lambda} \gamma^{mnp} r)}{192(\lambda \bar{\lambda})^2} \left( (d \gamma_{mnp} d) + 24 N_{mn} \Pi_p \right) \\ & - \frac{(r \gamma_{mnp} r)}{16(\lambda \bar{\lambda})^3} (\bar{\lambda} \gamma^m d) N^{np} + \frac{(r \gamma_{mnp} r)}{128(\lambda \bar{\lambda})^4} (\bar{\lambda} \gamma^{pqr} r) N^{mn} N_{qr} \end{aligned} \quad (2.41)$$

The solution is formal because the denominators in the holomorphic field  $(\lambda\bar{\lambda})$  produce singularities. A variety of regulators have been proposed in [42–44]. For the genus-two amplitude with five external states, positive powers of  $(\lambda\bar{\lambda})$  arise from the measure of the ghost fields, thereby regularizing the singularities in the  $b$ -ghost (see section 3.3 below and [7] for more details). The resulting expressions were used to evaluate the genus-two four-point amplitude [24] as well as the leading low energy limits of the genus-two five-amplitude [25] and the genus-three four-point amplitude [26].

### 3 Basics of genus-two amplitudes

In this section, we shall review and further develop those computations in the non-minimal pure spinor formalism on genus-two Riemann surfaces that are needed for our construction of the genus-two chiral amplitude with five external states. We re-iterate the strategy of our construction, as already outlined in the Introduction: we shall combine ingredients from the BRST cohomology of the pure spinor formulation and from the chiral splitting procedure to conjecture the genus-two chiral amplitude for five external states. We shall perform computations in the pure spinor formulation only to the extent that their outcome guides us towards a compelling structure of the amplitude, which will turn out to be unique.

The final formula of the chiral amplitude will be derived in section 4, and different representations will be explored in section 5. The physical amplitudes for Type II and Heterotic strings, obtained by assembling the contributions from the left and right moving chiral parts and integrating over loop momenta, will be presented in section 6. Along the way, the amplitude for four external states will be re-derived in subsection 3.4.

#### 3.1 Genus-two correlators in the pure spinor formalism

The ingredients needed to evaluate the correlators on genus-two Riemann surfaces that arise in the non-minimal pure spinor formalism are the partition functions, the zero mode counting, and the correlators of the non-zero mode parts of the canonical worldsheet fields. A regulator of the ghost zero mode integration is required to resolve indeterminacy issues in the pure spinor formulation. The discussion will be geared towards deriving the main target of this work at the end of section 4: the chiral genus-two amplitude for five external massless states, formulated as an integral over pure spinor superspace zero modes of a function of the external kinematics and the zero modes of the spinor variables  $\lambda^\alpha$  and  $\theta^\alpha$ . This formulation economically contains the amplitudes with five external states belonging to the gauge or supergravity multiplets which may be either bosons or fermions.

##### 3.1.1 Partition functions

All canonical chiral spinor fields in the non-minimal pure spinor formalism occur in conjugate pairs of a  $(1,0)$ -form on  $\Sigma$  and a  $(0,0)$ -form. Since the central charges of the spinor fields along with that of the chiral boson field  $x_+$  add up to zero, the holomorphic anomaly cancels, and each field contributes an effective chiral partition function. For the chiral bosons  $x_+^m$ , as derived from chiral splitting, this contribution is  $Z(\Omega)^{-10}$  while for the

pair of anti-commuting fields  $(p_\alpha, \theta^\alpha)$  (or equivalently the pair  $(d_\alpha, \theta^\alpha)$ ) the contribution is  $Z(\Omega)^{32}$ .

The commuting pair of fields  $(\lambda^\alpha, w_\alpha)$  is subject to the pure spinor constraint (2.1) and gauge-invariance (2.6) reducing their effective number of spinor degrees of freedom from 16 to 11 for both fields and producing a partition function  $Z(\Omega)^{-22}$ . Therefore, in combination with the contribution  $Z(\Omega)^{-10+32}$  from the matter variables, the combined partition function for the minimal pure spinor string is 1 [6].

Finally, the pair of commuting fields  $(\bar{\lambda}_\alpha, \bar{w}^\alpha)$  and anti-commuting fields  $(r_\alpha, s^\alpha)$  are subject to the pure spinor constraints (2.1) and gauge-invariances (2.6) reducing their effective number of spinor degrees of freedom from 16 to 11 for each field. Hence, the fields that are specific to the non-minimal pure spinor formalism produce a combined partition function of 1, consistent with the interpretation of this system as a topological field theory [7].<sup>7</sup>

### 3.1.2 Zero modes of $(1, 0)$ -form spinor fields

In this subsection, we shall discuss the zero modes of meromorphic  $(1, 0)$ -form spinor fields on a compact worldsheet  $\Sigma$  of genus  $h$ . It will be convenient to use the fields  $d_\alpha, N_{mn}, J, \bar{N}_{mn}, \bar{J}$  instead of  $p_\alpha, w_\alpha, \bar{w}^\alpha$  as discussed at the end of subsection 2.1. These meromorphic  $(1, 0)$ -form fields, on world-sheets of genus  $h \geq 1$ , have zero modes which are linear combinations of the holomorphic  $(1, 0)$ -forms  $\omega_I$  whose definition and properties are reviewed in appendix B. An explicit parametrization is obtained as follows,

$$d_\alpha(z) = \hat{d}_\alpha(z) + d_\alpha^I \omega_I(z) \quad \oint_{\mathfrak{A}_I} \hat{d}_\alpha = 0 \quad (3.1)$$

and similarly for the fields  $N_{mn}, J, \bar{N}_{mn}, \bar{J}$ , whose zero-mode coefficients will be denoted by  $N_{mn}^I, J^I, \bar{N}_{mn}^I, \bar{J}^I$ , respectively. The number of independent zero modes of these fields on a compact surface of genus  $h$  is as follows,

$$\begin{array}{ll} 16 \times h \text{ zero modes} & d_\alpha \\ 10 \times h \text{ zero modes} & N_{mn}, \bar{N}_{mn}, S_{mn} \\ h \text{ zero modes} & J, \bar{J}, S \end{array} \quad (3.2)$$

The zero modes of  $d_\alpha, S_{mn}, S$  are anti-commuting and those of  $N_{mn}, \bar{N}_{mn}, J, \bar{J}$  commuting.

### 3.1.3 Zero modes of $(0, 0)$ -form spinor fields and pure spinor superspace

On a surface  $\Sigma$  of arbitrary genus, the  $(0, 0)$ -form fields  $\theta^\alpha, \lambda^\alpha, \bar{\lambda}_\alpha$  and  $r_\alpha$  have a single zero mode for each value of  $\alpha$ . Thus, the field  $\theta^\alpha$  may be decomposed as follows,

$$\theta^\alpha(z) = \hat{\theta}^\alpha(z) + \theta_0^\alpha \quad (3.3)$$

---

<sup>7</sup>Due to the pure spinor constraints, the ghost fields are actually not free fields on  $\Sigma$ . However, decomposition of the SO(10) spinors under the subgroup U(5) allows one to change variables to a free field plus a  $(\beta, \gamma)$  system both of which may be handled with standard methods [5].

where  $\theta_0^\alpha$  is independent of  $z$ , and  $\hat{\theta}^\alpha(z)$  represents the non-zero mode contributions. The fields  $\lambda^\alpha$ ,  $\bar{\lambda}_\alpha$  and  $r_\alpha$  admit analogous decompositions. The integration over the zero modes of the fields will guarantee that full correlators are independent of the prescription used to define  $\hat{\theta}^\alpha(z)$  from  $\theta^\alpha(z)$ , for example by requiring that the integral of  $\hat{\theta}^\alpha(z)$  over  $\Sigma$  vanish.

An ubiquitous ingredient in the pure spinor formulation is the following  $\lambda$ -dependent tensor with ghost number 3 (see section 3.2 for its further use),

$$\mathfrak{T}_{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_5}(\lambda) = (\lambda \gamma^m)_{\alpha_1} (\lambda \gamma^n)_{\alpha_2} (\lambda \gamma^p)_{\alpha_3} (\gamma_{mnp})_{\alpha_4 \alpha_5} \quad (3.4)$$

which is manifestly anti-symmetric in  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$  as well as in  $\alpha_4, \alpha_5$ . Actually,  $\mathfrak{T}$  is totally anti-symmetric in all five spinor indices as may be established by showing that the contractions of  $\mathfrak{T}$  with  $(\gamma_a)_{\alpha_1 \alpha_4}$  and  $(\gamma_{abcde})_{\alpha_1 \alpha_4}$  vanish with the help of (A.4), (A.5), and (A.10). The tensor  $\mathfrak{T}$  projects the anti-symmetric tensor product of five spinors in the **16** of SO(10) onto the symmetric  $\gamma$ -traceless tensor product of three spinors  $\lambda$  in the **16** of SO(10).

By spacetime supersymmetry and BRST-cohomology arguments, the zero-mode integrals of the fields  $\theta^\alpha$  and  $\lambda^\alpha$  only receive contributions from the cohomology at ghost number 3, specifically from the combination  $\mathfrak{T} \theta \theta \theta \theta \theta$  [5], or more explicitly,<sup>8</sup>

$$\langle (\lambda \gamma^m \theta) (\lambda \gamma^n \theta) (\lambda \gamma^p \theta) (\theta \gamma_{mnp} \theta) \rangle_0 = 1 \quad (3.5)$$

The above normalization (sometimes chosen to be 2880 in the literature) affects the full chiral amplitude only by an overall multiplicative factor, which is not being sought after here, and may thus be chosen at will without loss of generality. The prescription (3.5) annihilates BRST-exact superfields,

$$\langle Q(\dots) \rangle_0 = 0 \quad (3.6)$$

a property which guarantees space-time gauge-invariance and supersymmetry of the expectation value of BRST-closed operators and allows us to carry out simplifications by adding  $Q$ -exact terms.

The goal of this paper is to derive the genus-two chiral amplitude for five external massless states from the correlators of five BRST-closed vertex operators. More specifically, the amplitude will be presented as an integral over the zero modes of  $\theta^\alpha$  and  $\lambda^\alpha$  of a BRST-closed integrand in pure spinor superspace that contains all the external kinematic data of five arbitrary states in the supergravity multiplet [45]. BRST-exact contributions may be discarded to simplify the form of the amplitude. As we shall see in section 4.4, the quest for BRST-closed integrands will lead us to the unique construction of the genus-two five-point amplitude.

### 3.1.4 The zero-mode regulator

The above ingredients for the evaluation of higher-genus correlators in the non-minimal pure spinor formalism usually lead to an indeterminacy in the integrals over the ghost zero

<sup>8</sup>Throughout, the integration over the zero mode part of the fields in the expectation value of an arbitrary operator  $\mathcal{O}$  will be denoted by  $\langle \mathcal{O} \rangle_0$ . It will be understood that the fields which enter into  $\mathcal{O}$  are to be evaluated on their zero-mode part only.

modes of the type 0/0. On the one hand, the singularities that arise when  $(\lambda\bar{\lambda})$  vanishes in the expression (2.41) for the  $b$ -ghost, or tends to  $\infty$ , cause the functional integrals over bosonic ghosts to diverge. On the other hand, the fermionic zero modes would cause the functional integrals to vanish for sufficiently low genus and/or small number of external states, as is the case for instance in the two-loop five-point amplitude under investigation.

The vanishing of the fermion zero mode integrations may be resolved by the insertion of the following “regulator” which was introduced in [7],

$$\mathcal{N}_h = \exp \left\{ -(\lambda\bar{\lambda}) - (r\theta) + \sum_{I=1}^h (w^I \bar{w}^I + s^I d^I) \right\} \quad (3.7)$$

where  $\lambda, \bar{\lambda}, r, \theta$  are restricted to their zero mode contributions, as explained in footnote 8. The argument of the exponential has been engineered to be BRST-exact, so that  $\mathcal{N}_h = 1 + Q(\dots)$  does not have any effect in the cohomology as long as the functional integrals converge.<sup>9</sup> It has been argued in [7] that for genus two no singularities arise when  $(\lambda\bar{\lambda}) \rightarrow 0$  thanks to the  $\lambda, \bar{\lambda}$ -dependence of the measure, and the insertion of the regulator  $\mathcal{N}_2$  leads to convergent zero-mode integrals. Note that the summation symbol over the index  $I$  has been kept explicitly because both factors in the summand have upper  $I$ -indices, for which no natural modular-invariant pairing exists.

### 3.1.5 Wick contractions of non-zero-mode fields

The Wick contractions for the vector field  $x^m$  were already discussed in section 2.2 on the chiral splitting procedure. The Wick contractions of the non zero-mode part of the field  $\theta^\alpha$  with itself vanishes,

$$\hat{\theta}^\alpha(z) \hat{\theta}^\beta(y) \sim 0 \quad (3.8)$$

while the Wick contractions of the non-zero mode part of the  $(1,0)$ -form spinor fields generally produce meromorphic  $(1,0)$  forms. For example, the Wick contractions of the fields  $\hat{p}_\alpha(z)$ ,  $\hat{d}_\alpha(z)$  and  $\hat{\Pi}_m = \Pi_m - 2\pi p_m^I \omega_I$  from (3.1) and (2.24) are given as follows,

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{p}_\alpha(z) \theta^\beta(y) &\sim \partial_z \ln E(z, y) \delta_\alpha^\beta \\ \hat{d}_\alpha(z) f(x(y), \theta(y)) &\sim \partial_z \ln E(z, y) D_\alpha f(x(y), \theta(y)) \\ \hat{\Pi}_m(z) f(x(y), \theta(y)) &\sim -\partial_z \ln E(z, y) \partial_m f(x(y), \theta(y)) \end{aligned} \quad (3.9)$$

where  $f(x, \theta)$  is an arbitrary function which depends on  $x$  and  $\theta$ , but not on the worldsheet derivatives of these fields. The meromorphic differential  $\partial_z \ln E(z, w)$  fails to be single-valued in its variables by itself, but the associated integrations over the zero modes of these fields will render the full correlators, into which they are inserted, properly single-valued. This is familiar for the case of the correlators of the fields  $\partial x_+^m$  with  $x_+^m$  thanks to momentum conservation, but also holds true for the Wick contractions of field  $p_\alpha$  with  $\theta^\alpha$ .

As should be expected, in the short distance limit  $z \rightarrow y$ , the Wick contractions of (3.9) reproduce the OPE singularities of the corresponding fields given in (D.1) and (D.2). While

<sup>9</sup>For the same reason, the usage of gauge-variant quantities in the exponential of (3.7) instead of the original gauge-invariant formulation in [7] has no effect in the amplitudes [46].

for genus zero, the knowledge of the OPE suffices to evaluate any conformal correlator, this is no longer true for higher genus. For the fields of the pure spinor string, the missing information is provided by the contributions from the zero modes of the  $(1, 0)$ -form fields. One manifestation of this is that for genus two and above, one has to distinguish the forms  $\partial_z \ln E(z, y) \omega_I(y)$  from  $-\partial_y \ln E(z, y) \omega_I(z)$ , whose short-distance behaviors agree and which coincide for the sphere (genus zero) and for the torus (genus one). Fortunately, we shall not need the detailed evaluation of the full correlator for the genus-two five-point amplitude as in [25], since it will suffice to extract all relevant information from the singularities at coinciding vertex points (see section 4.5).

### 3.1.6 The chiral correlator in pure spinor superspace

The chiral amplitude for  $N$  massless states at genus two is given by the correlator,

$$\mathcal{F}_{(N)} = \left\langle \mathcal{N}_2 \prod_{a=1}^3 (\mu_a, b) \prod_{i=1}^N U_i(z_i) \right\rangle \quad (\mu_a, b) = \int_{\Sigma} \mu_a b \quad (3.10)$$

provided this correlator is convergent. The Beltrami differentials are denoted by  $\mu_a$  for  $a = 1, 2, 3$ , and will be specified later with the help of (3.20). The bracket notation  $\langle \dots \rangle$  in (3.10) is used for the complete functional integral for the zero modes and non-zero modes of all the fields in the worldsheet action (2.2). The subscript of  $\langle \dots \rangle_0$  in (3.5), by contrast, refers to the zero-mode integrals for the  $(0, 0)$ -form fields  $\lambda^\alpha$  and  $\theta^\alpha$ . The integrations over the positions  $z_i$  and the loop momenta  $p_m^I$  will be carried out after the chiral blocks and their conjugates have been paired.

The chiral correlator is evaluated by integrating over the chiral spinor fields and over the effective chiral scalar field  $x_+^m$  of chiral splitting, considered at fixed loop momenta  $p_I^m$ . Since each of the vertex operators include a plane wave factor, the correlator of the effective chiral scalar field  $x_+^m$  produces the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor  $\mathcal{I}_{(N)}$  given by (cf. (2.18)),

$$\mathcal{I}_{(N)} = \exp \left\{ i\pi \Omega_{IJ} p^I \cdot p^J + \sum_{i=1}^N 2\pi i p^I \cdot k_i \int_{z_0}^{z_i} \omega_I - \sum_{i < j}^N s_{ij} \ln E(z_i, z_j) \right\} \quad (3.11)$$

The dimensionless kinematic invariants  $s_{ij}$  are given by,

$$s_{ij} = -\frac{\alpha'}{4} (k_i + k_j)^2 = -k_i \cdot k_j \quad (3.12)$$

The second equality arises from our choice  $\alpha' = 2$  and the mass-shell condition  $k_i^2 = k_j^2 = 0$ .

Since the Koba-Nielsen factor (3.11) is an ubiquitous constituent of the chiral amplitude (3.10), the main goal of this work will be to evaluate the remaining factor  $\mathcal{K}_{(N)}$ ,

$$\mathcal{F}_{(N)} = \mathcal{I}_{(N)} \langle \mathcal{K}_{(N)} \rangle_0 \quad (3.13)$$

In order to obtain an amplitude representation in pure spinor superspace and keep any combination of external bosons and fermions accessible, the zero-mode integral (3.5) is left to be performed. The desired superspace expression  $\mathcal{K}_{(N)}$  will be referred to as a chiral

correlator and encodes the dependence on the polarization vectors and spinors of bosons and fermions, respectively, in a supersymmetric manner. Since the factor  $\mathcal{I}_{(N)}$  already transforms according to (2.21) under homology shifts, the reduced amplitude  $\mathcal{K}_{(N)}$  must be strictly invariant under these shifts, without any phase factor.

In fact, chiral correlators  $\mathcal{K}_{(N)}$  fall into equivalence classes in two respects: First,  $Q$ -exact terms do not contribute within the bracket  $\langle \dots \rangle_0$ , and second, total derivatives  $\partial_{z_i}(\mathcal{I}_{(N)}\mathcal{K}_{(N)})$  integrate to zero after assembling the overall amplitudes. Hence, it suffices to construct a particularly convenient representative of  $\mathcal{K}_{(N)}$  as we will do in the two-loop five-point case.

### 3.2 Zero mode counting

The large number of zero modes of the spinor fields greatly simplifies the calculations and makes the evaluation of the correlator (3.10) with a small number  $N$  of external states possible. We begin by observing that the vertex operators  $U_i(z_i)$  do not involve the fields  $\bar{\lambda}_\alpha, \bar{w}^\alpha, s^\alpha, r_\alpha$ . Since the  $b$ -ghost is also independent of the field  $\bar{w}^\alpha$  the zero modes of  $\bar{w}^\alpha$  must be paired with those of  $w_\alpha$  via the regulator  $\mathcal{N}_2$  of (3.7). Equivalently, the zero modes of  $\bar{N}_{mn}$  and  $J_{\bar{\lambda}}$  must be paired with the zero modes of  $N_{mn}$  and  $J_\lambda$ . This leaves no room for zero modes of the fields  $N_{mn}$  to occur either in the vertex operators or in the  $b$ -ghost insertions.

Next, we concentrate on the zero modes of the fields  $s^\alpha$  and  $d_\alpha$ , which add up to 22 and 32 zero modes, respectively. The vertex operators  $U_i$  do not involve the field  $s^\alpha$  and the  $b$ -ghost involves  $s^\alpha$  only through its first term in (2.41). Let us denote by  $\sigma$  the number of zero modes of the field  $s^\alpha$  absorbed by the 3  $b$ -ghosts. Each  $b$ -ghost may absorb at most 1 zero mode of  $s^\alpha$ , so that  $0 \leq \sigma \leq 3$ . The regulator  $\mathcal{N}_2$  will absorb exactly as many  $s^\alpha$  zero modes as it absorbs  $d_\alpha$  zero modes. Therefore, the number of  $d_\alpha$  zero modes absorbed by the integration over the  $s^\alpha$  zero modes, the regulator, and the  $s^\alpha$ -dependent part of the  $b$ -ghosts equals  $22 - \sigma$ .

Further  $d_\alpha$  zero modes may be absorbed by the remaining terms in the  $b$ -ghost, but this number is bounded from above by  $6 - 2\sigma$ . Tallying all contributions, we conclude that the maximal number of  $d_\alpha$  zero modes absorbed by the measure and the  $b$ -ghosts is  $22 - \sigma + 6 - 2\sigma = 28 - 3\sigma$ , leaving at least  $4 + 3\sigma$  zero modes to be absorbed by the vertex operators. Since each vertex operator is at most linear in  $d_\alpha$ , any amplitude whose number of external states is 6 or fewer must have  $\sigma = 0$ , leaving at least 4 zero modes of the  $d_\alpha$  field to be absorbed by the vertex operators  $U_i$ . For amplitudes with 4 or 5 external massless states of interest in this paper, we thus have  $\sigma = 0$ , and the integration over the zero modes of  $s^\alpha$  produces the following measure for the integration over the zero modes of the field  $d_\alpha(z) = \hat{d}_\alpha(z) + d_\alpha^I \omega_I(z)$ ,

$$\prod_{I=1}^2 \int [d d^I] (\varepsilon \cdot \mathfrak{T} \cdot d^I) \quad (3.14)$$

Here the combination  $(\varepsilon \cdot \mathfrak{T} \cdot d^I)$  for each  $I$  is given by,

$$(\varepsilon \cdot \mathfrak{T} \cdot d^I) = \varepsilon^{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_{16}} \mathfrak{T}_{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_5} d_{\alpha_6}^I \dots d_{\alpha_{16}}^I \quad (3.15)$$

where the  $\lambda$ -dependent tensor  $\mathfrak{T}$  was introduced in (3.4), and  $[d d^I]$  stands for the integration measure for the zero modes  $d^I$ . Since  $(\varepsilon \cdot \mathfrak{T} \cdot d^I)$  involves 11 zero modes for each value of the index  $I$ , a non-vanishing integral requires a further integrand with five  $d^I$  factors and, for a given value of  $I$ , we have,

$$\begin{aligned} \int [d d^I] (\varepsilon \cdot \mathfrak{T} \cdot d^I) d_{\alpha_1}^I d_{\alpha_2}^I d_{\alpha_3}^I d_{\alpha_4}^I d_{\alpha_5}^I &= c \mathfrak{T}_{\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3 \alpha_4 \alpha_5} \\ \int [d d^I] (\varepsilon \cdot \mathfrak{T} \cdot d^I) d_{\alpha_1}^I d_{\alpha_2}^I d_{\alpha_3}^I (d^I \gamma^{mnp} d^I) &= 96c (\lambda \gamma^{[m})_{\alpha_1} (\lambda \gamma^n)_{\alpha_2} (\lambda \gamma^{p]})_{\alpha_3} \end{aligned} \quad (3.16)$$

where on the right side of the second equation the indices  $mnp$  are anti-symmetrized. The normalization  $c$  can be found in [26] but is of no concern to us here, as the absolute normalization of the amplitude may be fixed by other methods such as unitarity.

### 3.3 Zero modes absorbed by the $b$ -ghosts

The non-vanishing of the genus-two amplitude for  $N$  massless states given in (3.10) requires that all the 32 zero modes  $d_\alpha^I$  of the field  $d_\alpha(z)$  be absorbed by a conspiracy of the  $b$ -ghost and the vertex operators. As shown in the previous subsection, for  $N \leq 5$ , the  $s\partial\bar{\lambda}$  term of the  $b$ -ghost does not contribute and the vertex operators can absorb at most 5  $d$ -zero modes. As a result, the  $b$ -ghosts must contribute either 5 or 6  $d$ -zero modes, which can arise only from the terms bilinear in  $d$  or the term linear in  $d_\alpha$  in the composite spinor  $G^\alpha$  defined by (2.39). (Note that the term linear in  $d$  and linear in the field  $N_{mn}$  in (2.41) involves a zero mode of the field  $N_{mn}$ , but this cannot contribute as argued in the preceding subsection). In summary, the effective ghost field for  $N \leq 5$  takes the form,

$$b = \frac{(\bar{\lambda} \gamma^m d)}{2(\lambda \bar{\lambda})} \Pi_m + \frac{(\bar{\lambda} \gamma^{mnp} r)}{192(\lambda \bar{\lambda})^2} (d \gamma_{mnp} d) + \dots \quad (3.17)$$

where the ellipses stand for terms that do not contribute for  $N \leq 5$ .

Parametrizing the insertion points of the  $b$ -ghosts by the variables  $v_a$  for  $a = 1, 2, 3$ , we use the fact that only the zero modes of the fields  $\lambda, \bar{\lambda}, r, d$  contribute to the  $b$ -ghost insertions to render the  $v_a$  dependence of the  $b$ -ghost explicit,

$$b(v_a) = \sum_I \frac{(\bar{\lambda} \gamma^m d^I)}{2(\lambda \bar{\lambda})} \omega_I(v_a) \Pi_m(v_a) + \sum_{I,J} \frac{(\bar{\lambda} r d^I d^J)}{192(\lambda \bar{\lambda})^2} \omega_I(v_a) \omega_J(v_a) + \dots \quad (3.18)$$

where we have introduced the following convenient shorthand,

$$(\bar{\lambda} r d^I d^J) = (\bar{\lambda} \gamma^{mnp} r) (d^I \gamma_{mnp} d^J) \quad (3.19)$$

We shall choose a system of local complex coordinates,  $\tau_a$  with  $a = 1, 2, 3$ , on moduli space and associated Beltrami differentials  $\mu_a$  so that,

$$\frac{\partial \Omega_{IJ}}{\partial \tau_a} = \int_{\Sigma} \mu_a \omega_I \omega_J \quad (3.20)$$

The chiral volume form on moduli space is given by,

$$d^3\Omega = d\Omega_{11} \wedge d\Omega_{12} \wedge d\Omega_{22} = \sum_{a,b,c} \frac{\partial \Omega_{11}}{\partial \tau_a} \frac{\partial \Omega_{12}}{\partial \tau_b} \frac{\partial \Omega_{22}}{\partial \tau_c} d\tau_a \wedge d\tau_b \wedge d\tau_c \quad (3.21)$$

Non-vanishing contributions from the  $b$ -ghost insertions therefore require specific arrangements of the  $d$ -zero modes. Contributions from the  $b$ -ghosts with 6 and 5  $d$ -zero modes, respectively, are given by the arrangements,

$$\begin{aligned} 6 \text{ zero modes} & \quad (\bar{\lambda}rd^1d^1)(\bar{\lambda}rd^1d^2)(\bar{\lambda}rd^2d^2) \\ 5 \text{ zero modes} & \quad (\bar{\lambda}rd^1d^1)\left(2(\bar{\lambda}\gamma^m d^2)(\bar{\lambda}rd^1d^2) - (\bar{\lambda}\gamma^m d^1)(\bar{\lambda}rd^2d^2)\right) \\ & \quad (\bar{\lambda}rd^2d^2)\left(2(\bar{\lambda}\gamma^m d^1)(\bar{\lambda}rd^1d^2) - (\bar{\lambda}\gamma^m d^2)(\bar{\lambda}rd^1d^1)\right) \end{aligned} \quad (3.22)$$

The contribution for 6 zero modes directly produces the measure on moduli space, as the coefficient of this term is a holomorphic quadratic differential in each insertion point of the  $b$ -ghost. The contribution with 5 zero modes is contracted with the  $(1,0)$ -form field  $\Pi_m(v_a)$  and, in view of the results of the chiral splitting procedure (2.24), receives two different types of contributions. The term linear in loop momentum  $p_m^I$  provides a holomorphic  $(1,0)$  form, so that its contribution directly generates the measure on moduli space. The other two terms of  $\Pi_m$  exhibited in (2.24) are generally meromorphic rather than holomorphic; it is unclear at present how to evaluate their contribution directly, but we shall infer it by imposing various consistency conditions.

### 3.4 The chiral amplitude for four external states

For four external states, the above counting shows that each  $b$ -ghost must contribute exactly 2  $d$ -zero modes, resulting in the pattern of the first line of (3.22), and each vertex must contribute exactly 1  $d$ -zero mode. Omitting the overall  $\lambda\bar{\lambda}$ -dependent normalization, the structure of the remaining integration is as follows,

$$\prod_{I=1}^2 \int [dd^I](\varepsilon \cdot \mathfrak{T} \cdot d^I)(\bar{\lambda}rd^1d^1)(\bar{\lambda}rd^1d^2)(\bar{\lambda}rd^2d^2) \prod_{i=1}^4 (dW_i) \quad (3.23)$$

where only the zero modes of the field  $d$  contribute in its pairing against the SYM fields  $W_i$ ,

$$(dW_i) \rightarrow \sum_{I=1}^2 (d^I W_i)(z_i) \omega_I(z_i) \quad (3.24)$$

By construction, the amplitude is Bose symmetric in the indices labeling the external states.

All dependence on the  $d$ -zero modes has now been made explicit, and its integral may be carried out using (3.16). The contributions vanish unless two of the four factors  $(dW_i)$  carry the zero mode  $d^1$  while the other two carry the zero mode  $d^2$ . To evaluate these contributions we shall single out one specific assignment and then sum over all permutations. Carrying out the integral over  $d$ -zero modes, we find [24],

$$\begin{aligned} & \prod_{I=1}^2 \int [dd^I](\varepsilon \cdot \mathfrak{T} \cdot d^I)(\bar{\lambda}rd^1d^1)(\bar{\lambda}rd^1d^2)(\bar{\lambda}rd^2d^2)(d^1 W_1)(d^1 W_2)(d^2 W_3)(d^2 W_4) \\ & = (\lambda \gamma_{abcp} \lambda)(\bar{\lambda} \gamma^{mnp} r)(\bar{\lambda} \gamma^{qst} r)(\bar{\lambda} \gamma^{abc} r)(\lambda \gamma_m W_1)(\lambda \gamma_n W_2)(\lambda \gamma_q W_3)(\lambda \gamma_s W_4) \end{aligned} \quad (3.25)$$

Carrying out the integration over the zero mode of the field  $r$  converts each  $r$  into a super derivative acting on the vertex operators, and we obtain,

$$(\lambda\gamma_{abcpt}\lambda)(\bar{\lambda}\gamma^{mnp}D)(\bar{\lambda}\gamma^{qst}D)(\bar{\lambda}\gamma^{abc}D)(\lambda\gamma_mW_1)(\lambda\gamma_nW_2)(\lambda\gamma_qW_3)(\lambda\gamma_sW_4) \quad (3.26)$$

Given the choice of the zero mode assignments made here, this expression is manifestly invariant under the permutations  $1 \leftrightarrow 2$  and  $3 \leftrightarrow 4$  as well as under  $(1, 2) \leftrightarrow (3, 4)$ .

Applying a single super derivative to a field  $W_i$  produces the field strength  $F_i$ , while applying more than one super derivative to the same field  $W_i$  introduces bosonic derivatives  $k_i W_i$  and  $k_i F_i$ . Still, the latter contributions are BRST equivalent to the terms of schematic form  $WFFF$  from applying each super derivative to a single one of the  $W$  fields. See appendix A of [24] for further details. More specifically, carrying out the integration over  $\bar{\lambda}$  produces a sum of four distinct terms,

$$T_{1,2|3,4} = \frac{1}{4} (\mathbf{t}_{1,2|3;4} + \mathbf{t}_{1,2|4;3} + \mathbf{t}_{3,4|1;2} + \mathbf{t}_{3,4|2;1}) \quad (3.27)$$

where each term is given by,

$$\mathbf{t}_{1,2|3;4} = (\lambda\gamma_{mnpqr}\lambda)F_1^{mn}F_2^{pq}F_3^{rs}(\lambda\gamma_sW_4) \quad (3.28)$$

The manifest symmetry properties are  $\mathbf{t}_{1,2|3;4} = \mathbf{t}_{2,1|3;4}$  and  $T_{1,2|3,4} = T_{2,1|3,4} = T_{3,4|1,2}$  while, as a consequence of (A.12), we also have the following cyclic symmetries,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{t}_{1,2|3;4} + \mathbf{t}_{2,3|1;4} + \mathbf{t}_{3,1|2;4} &= 0 \\ T_{1,2|3,4} + T_{1,3|4,2} + T_{1,4|2,3} &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (3.29)$$

To verify BRST closure of  $\mathbf{t}$ , we use the results of (2.34) that  $(\lambda\gamma_sW_4)$  and  $(\lambda\gamma_{mnpqr}\lambda)F_1^{mn}F_2^{pq}$  are BRST closed, so that it remains only to apply  $Q$  to  $F_3$  which gives,

$$Q \mathbf{t}_{1,2|3;4} = (\lambda\gamma_{mnpqr}\lambda)F_1^{mn}F_2^{pq} \left( (\lambda\gamma^s\partial^r W_3) - (\lambda\gamma^r\partial^s W_3) \right) (\lambda\gamma_sW_4) = 0 \quad (3.30)$$

The contribution from the first and second terms in the parentheses vanishes in view of (A.7) for pure spinors and (A.10), respectively. As a result,  $\mathbf{t}_{1,2|3;4}$  and  $T_{1,2|3,4}$  are BRST closed.

The worldsheet dependence of the amplitude for four external states involves the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor (3.11), multiplied by a combination of holomorphic  $(1,0)$ -forms. We define the bi-holomorphic  $(1,0)$ -form,

$$\Delta(z_1, z_2) = \omega_1(z_1)\omega_2(z_2) - \omega_2(z_1)\omega_1(z_2) \quad (3.31)$$

Recall that, following our notations and conventions spelled out in footnote 2,  $\omega_I(z)$  is the coefficient function of the  $(1,0)$ -form  $\omega_I(z)dz$  in local complex coordinates, and  $\Delta(z_1, z_2)$  is similarly the coefficient function of the differential  $\Delta(z_1, z_2)dz_1 \wedge dz_2$ . With these conventions,  $\Delta(z_1, z_2)$  is manifestly antisymmetric in  $z_1, z_2$ , and satisfies the following cyclic

permutation sum identities,<sup>10</sup>

$$\begin{aligned}\omega_I(1)\Delta(2,3) + \omega_I(2)\Delta(3,1) + \omega_I(3)\Delta(1,2) &= 0 \\ \Delta(1,2)\Delta(3,4) + \Delta(1,3)\Delta(4,2) + \Delta(1,4)\Delta(2,3) &= 0\end{aligned}\tag{3.32}$$

The chiral amplitude is given by [22],

$$\mathcal{K}_{(4)} = T_{1,2|3,4} \Delta(1,3)\Delta(2,4) + T_{1,3|2,4} \Delta(1,2)\Delta(3,4)\tag{3.33}$$

Symmetries under the permutations  $(2 \leftrightarrow 3)$  and  $(1 \leftrightarrow 4)$  are manifest from the above expression, while symmetry under the permutation  $(1 \leftrightarrow 2)$  may be established using both the symmetries of  $T$  in (3.29) and of  $\Delta$  in (3.32). After performing the zero-mode integral (3.5) for  $\lambda$  and  $\theta$ , the bosonic components of  $\langle \mathcal{K}_{(4)} \rangle_0$  were shown in [23] to reproduce the result of the RNS computation [16]. A proof of this equivalence using pure spinor superspace cohomology techniques can be found in [47].

## 4 Genus-two amplitudes for five massless states

In this section, we shall obtain the main result of this paper by carrying out the construction of the genus-two chiral amplitude for five massless states. To do so, we use chiral splitting, zero mode counting and BRST cohomology of the pure spinor formulation.

### 4.1 Structure of the chiral amplitude for five external states

The starting point is the genus-two chiral amplitude for five external massless states, given by the correlator of (3.10) and (3.13) for the case  $N = 5$ ,

$$\mathcal{F}_{(5)} = \mathcal{I}_{(5)} \langle \mathcal{K}_{(5)} \rangle_0 = \left\langle \mathcal{N}_2 \prod_{a=1}^3 (b, \mu_a) \prod_{i=1}^5 U_i(z_i) \right\rangle\tag{4.1}$$

The vertex operators  $U_i$  are given by,

$$U_i = \partial\theta^\alpha A_{i\alpha}(x, \theta) + \Pi_m A_i^m(x, \theta) + d_\alpha W_i^\alpha(x, \theta) + \frac{1}{2} N_{mn} F_i^{mn}(x, \theta)\tag{4.2}$$

where each superfield multiplet  $(A_{i\alpha}, A_i^m, W_i^\alpha, F_i^{mn})$  encodes the polarization vector and spinor of the state  $i$ , as made explicit in (2.32). Following the pattern for the distribution of  $d$ -zero modes for five external states of (3.22) derived in subsection 3.3, the  $b$ -ghosts can absorb either five or six  $d$ -zero modes, leaving the vertex operators to absorb either five or four  $d$ -zero modes, respectively. We shall now discuss each part in turn.

---

<sup>10</sup>Henceforth, when no confusion is expected to arise, we shall denote the points  $z_i$  as arguments of functions and forms, simply by their label  $i$ , and the derivative with respect to  $z_i$  by  $\partial_i$ , so that for example  $\omega_I(i) = \omega_I(z_i)$ ,  $\Delta(i, j) = \Delta(z_i, z_j)$ , and  $\partial_i \ln E(i, j) = \partial_{z_i} \ln E(z_i, z_j)$ .

### 4.1.1 Four $d$ -zero modes and one loop momentum from vertex operators

The contribution from the  $b$ -ghost that contains six  $d$ -zero modes is of the form,

$$\prod_{a=1}^3 (b, \mu_a) \rightarrow (\bar{\lambda} r d^1 d^1)(\bar{\lambda} r d^1 d^2)(\bar{\lambda} r d^2 d^2) \quad (4.3)$$

so that the product of five vertex operators needs to supply four  $d$  zero modes. The corresponding contribution to  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  is given by,

$$\left\langle (\bar{\lambda} \gamma D)^3 \left( U_1(d^1 W_2)(d^1 W_3)(d^2 W_4)(d^2 W_5) \right) \right\rangle + 14 \text{ permutations} \quad (4.4)$$

where we recall that  $D$  stands for the super derivative in (2.29) and we have carried out the usual integration over  $r$  which leads to  $(\bar{\lambda} \gamma r) \rightarrow (\bar{\lambda} \gamma D)$ . The permutations consist of all 120 permutations modulo those which swap  $2 \leftrightarrow 3$  as well as those which swap  $4 \leftrightarrow 5$  and finally those which swap the pair  $(2, 3) \leftrightarrow (4, 5)$ , in view of the symmetries of the distribution of  $d$  zero modes.

We start by considering the contributions to (4.4) that are linear in loop momentum: Decomposing the operator  $\Pi_m$  in  $U_1$  according to the rules of chiral splitting in (2.24), we find a loop-momentum dependent term

$$2\pi p_m^I \omega_I(z_1) \left\langle (\bar{\lambda} \gamma D)^3 \left( A_1^m (d^1 W_2)(d^1 W_3)(d^2 W_4)(d^2 W_5) \right) \right\rangle + 14 \text{ permutations} \quad (4.5)$$

and leave the leftover contributions  $\partial x_+^m(z_1) + \frac{1}{2}(\theta \gamma^m \partial \theta)(z_1)$  from (2.24) for the next section.

Applying the three super derivatives  $D$  in (4.5) produces two types of terms. Applying all three  $D$  to  $W_i$  vertex operators produces terms of the form  $A_1^m$  times the building block of the four-point amplitude  $T_{1,2|3,4}$  plus permutations thereof. However, in addition to these contributions, which are schematically of the form  $AFFFW$ , terms involving  $DA_1$  and terms in which several  $D$  act on the same  $W_i$  are also produced. At four points, different partitions of the super derivatives to the superfields  $WWWW$  turn out to be BRST equivalent [24]. We expect that also at five points, the chiral correlator admits a cohomology representative where the contributions of (4.5) are captured by permutations of  $A_1^m T_{2,3|4,5}$ . They will produce a contribution to the “vector block”, as we will see in section 4.2. An explicit evaluation of (4.5) may be found in section 5 of [25].

### 4.1.2 Four $d$ -zero modes and one Wick contraction from vertex operators

It remains to carry out the Wick contractions of  $U_1$  with the fields  $W_i$ . Using the vanishing of the Wick contractions of the non-zero modes of  $\theta^\alpha$  given in (3.8), we see that the contraction of the term proportional to  $\partial \theta^\alpha$  on the right side of  $U_1$  in (4.2) with the remaining  $W_i$  operators vanishes identically, so that this term in  $U_1$  may be omitted. The contribution of the zero mode of  $N_{mn}$  in  $U_1$  similarly cancels as a factor of  $\bar{N}_{mn}$  would be needed to give a non-zero contribution. The Wick contractions of the non-zero mode of  $N_{mn}$  with the other fields similarly cancel. The remaining contribution is thus given by [25],

$$\left\langle (\bar{\lambda} \gamma D)^3 \left( \hat{\Pi}_m A_1^m(x, \theta) + \hat{d}_\alpha W_1^\alpha(x, \theta) \right) (z_1) (d^1 W_2)(d^1 W_3)(d^2 W_4)(d^2 W_5) \right\rangle \quad (4.6)$$

where  $\hat{\Pi}^m(z_1) = \partial x_+^m(z_1) + \frac{1}{2}(\theta\gamma^m\partial\theta)(z_1)$  is obtained by removing the loop momentum from the chiral-splitting prescription in (2.24). Wick contractions of  $\hat{\Pi}^m$  give rise to contributions linear in external momenta which arise from four vertex operators of the form  $(dW_i)$ , two of which carry a  $d^1$  zero mode with the other two carrying a  $d^2$  zero mode.

$$\hat{\Pi}^m(z_1)W_i^\beta(z_i) \sim -i\partial_{z_1} \ln E(z_1, z_i) k_i^m W_i^\beta \quad (4.7)$$

Finally, the Wick contractions of  $\hat{d}_\alpha(z_1)$  with  $W_i^\beta$  for  $i = 2, 3, 4, 5$  is given by the last formula of (3.9), and in this case simplifies as follows,

$$\hat{d}_\alpha(z_1)W_i^\beta(z_i) \sim \partial_{z_1} \ln E(z_1, z_i) D_\alpha W_i^\beta = \frac{1}{4}(\gamma_{mn})_\alpha^\beta F_i^{mn} \partial_{z_1} \ln E(z_1, z_i) \quad (4.8)$$

The two contributions (4.7) and (4.8) will produce terms in the “scalar block”, as we will see in section 4.5.2.

#### 4.1.3 Contributions with five $d$ -zero modes from vertex operators

The contribution from the  $b$ -ghost that contains five  $d$ -zero modes is of the form,

$$\prod_{a=1}^3 (b, \mu_a) \rightarrow (\bar{\lambda}rd^2d^2)\Pi_m \left( 2(\bar{\lambda}\gamma^m d^1)(\bar{\lambda}rd^1d^2) - (\bar{\lambda}\gamma^m d^2)(\bar{\lambda}rd^1d^1) \right) \quad (4.9)$$

plus the same term with  $d^1$  and  $d^2$  zero modes swapped. As a result, the product of the vertex operators needs to supply five  $d$  zero modes, more specifically three  $d^1$  zero modes and two  $d^2$  zero modes for the term written down above. The corresponding contribution of the above term to  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  is given by [25],

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\langle \Pi_m(d^2\gamma d^2) (2(\bar{\lambda}\gamma^m d^1)(d^1\gamma d^2) - (\bar{\lambda}\gamma^m d^2)(d^1\gamma d^1)) \right. \\ & \quad \left. \times (\bar{\lambda}\gamma D)^2(d^1W_1)(d^1W_2)(d^1W_3)(d^2W_4)(d^2W_5) \right\rangle \end{aligned} \quad (4.10)$$

plus the same contribution with the zero modes  $d^1$  and  $d^2$  swapped. Expanding  $\Pi_m$  as in (2.24), evaluated this time at one of the  $b$ -ghost insertions, produces terms linear in loop momenta and terms which are linear in external momenta. The terms linear in loop momenta are accompanied by a holomorphic  $(1,0)$ -form at the  $b$ -ghost insertion point and will directly lead to the measure on moduli space. Terms linear in external momenta will not be computed directly but rather inferred by consistency.

For the contributions linear in loop momenta we construct an expression of the schematic form  $FFWWWW$  from cohomology arguments in the next section: Carrying out the integration over  $d$ -zero modes and  $r$ -zero modes in (4.10), we see that we now have two super derivatives acting on the vertex operators (in contrast with the contribution with four  $d$  zero modes from the vertex operators, where we had three super derivatives). When the super derivatives act on two different vertex operators, the respective superfields  $W_i$  will be converted to  $F_i$ , leaving expressions of the schematic form  $FFWWWW$ . Contributions of the form  $WWWWWD^2W$  are expected to be BRST equivalent to those of the form  $FFWWWW$  by analogy with the fate of the four-point contributions  $D^3(WWWWW)$  [24].

## 4.2 The vector block for the amplitude of five external states

Summarizing the structural information gathered in the previous subsection, we have two distinct types of contributions to the chiral amplitude for five external states. The first contribution is linear in the loop momenta and will be referred to as the vector block, while the second contribution is independent of loop momenta and will be referred to as the scalar block. Our strategy will be to determine first the vector block, in part from information obtained through its structural analysis in the previous section, and in part from enforcing BRST invariance. The scalar block will not be computed directly, but will be determined uniquely from the monodromy behavior of the vector block (recall that, according to (2.20), loop momenta behave non-trivially under moving a vertex operator point  $z_i$  around a  $\mathfrak{B}$ -cycle on the surface) combined with BRST invariance.

The vector block receives two different types of contributions, symbolically of the form  $AFFFW$  and  $FFWWW$ , as was derived in the previous section. It will be convenient to label the contributions to the vector block with vertex operator indices corresponding to the distribution of  $d^1$  and  $d^2$  zero modes in the contribution with five  $d$ -zero modes on the vertex operators. Thus, a contribution with three  $d^1$  zero modes on vertex operators 1, 2, 3 and two  $d^2$  zero modes on vertex operators 4, 5 will contribute to  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$ . We will also include in  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  the contributions with four  $d$ -zero modes on the vertex operators, specifically two  $d^2$ -zero modes on vertex operators 4, 5 with two  $d^1$  zero modes and one  $A_m$  vertex distributed amongst the points 1, 2, 3. Thus, the vector block  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  takes the form [48],

$$T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m = A_1^m T_{2,3|4,5} + A_2^m T_{3,1|4,5} + A_3^m T_{1,2|4,5} + W_{1,2,3|4,5}^m \quad (4.11)$$

where  $T_{2,3|4,5}$  and its permutations are the four-state blocks defined in (3.27), and  $W$  collects all the contributions of the structural form  $FFWWW$ . The first three terms on the right side of (4.11) are invariant under all permutations of 1, 2, 3 as well as under swapping 4, 5. Our goal will be to construct  $W_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  and thus  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  which are invariant under these symmetries as well.

A crucial ingredient in our construction will be the BRST transformation property of the vector block. Using the BRST invariance of  $T_{2,3|4,5}$  and its permutations, and the BRST transform of  $A_m$  given in (2.33), the BRST transformation of the vector block is given by,

$$QT_{1,2,3|4,5}^m = ik_1^m V_1 T_{2,3|4,5} + ik_2^m V_2 T_{3,1|4,5} + ik_3^m V_3 T_{1,2|4,5} \quad (4.12)$$

provided the BRST transform of  $W_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  satisfies,

$$QW_{1,2,3|4,5}^m = -(\lambda\gamma^m W_1) T_{2,3|4,5} - (\lambda\gamma^m W_2) T_{3,1|4,5} - (\lambda\gamma^m W_3) T_{1,2|4,5} \quad (4.13)$$

We shall now show that this equation may be solved for  $W_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$ , up to BRST exact contributions, by a sum of terms each of which is of the structural form  $FFWWW$ , as

predicted in the previous subsection. Three distinct types of contributions arise,

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathfrak{w}_1)_{3,4;5|1,2}^m &= -\frac{1}{8}(\lambda\gamma^m W_5) \{(\lambda\gamma_{pq}\gamma^r W_1)F_2^{pq} + (1 \leftrightarrow 2)\} \{(\lambda\gamma_{st}\gamma_r W_3)F_4^{st} + (3 \leftrightarrow 4)\} \\ (\mathfrak{w}_2)_{3,4;5|1,2}^m &= \frac{1}{6}(\lambda\gamma_t W_5)(\lambda\gamma_{npqrs}\lambda)F_1^{np}F_2^{qr}(W_3\gamma^{mst}W_4) \\ (\mathfrak{w}_3)_{3,4;5|1,2}^m &= -\frac{1}{3}(\lambda\gamma_r W_5) \{(\lambda\gamma_{pq}\gamma^m W_1)F_2^{pq} + (1 \leftrightarrow 2)\} \{(\lambda\gamma_s W_3)F_4^{rs} + (3 \leftrightarrow 4)\} \end{aligned} \quad (4.14)$$

The overall coefficients have been chosen for later convenience. To make a connection with the structural analysis, the first term arises from four  $d$ -zero modes coming from the vertex operators, and one super derivative applied to  $A_5^m$ . The second and third terms arise from five  $d$ -zero modes coming from the vertex operators. Specifically, the second term arises from the first term in the large parentheses of (4.10) while the third term arises from the second term in the parentheses of (4.10).

The BRST transformations of these partial contributions are readily obtained using the results of (2.33) and (2.34), as well as the following identities,

$$\begin{aligned} Q\{(\lambda\gamma_{pq}\gamma_r W_i)F_j^{pq}\} + (i \leftrightarrow j) &= -\frac{1}{2}(\lambda\gamma_{stpqrs}\lambda)F_i^{st}F_j^{pq} \\ Q(W_i\gamma^{mst}W_j) &= \frac{1}{4}(\lambda\gamma_{pq}\gamma^{mst}W_j)F_i^{pq} + (i \leftrightarrow j) \end{aligned} \quad (4.15)$$

The resulting BRST transformations are then given by,

$$\begin{aligned} Q(\mathfrak{w}_1)_{3,4;5|1,2}^m &= \frac{1}{4}(\lambda\gamma^m W_5) (\mathfrak{t}_{1,2|3;4} + \mathfrak{t}_{1,2|4;3} - \mathfrak{t}_{3,4|1;2} - \mathfrak{t}_{3,4|2;1}) \\ Q(\mathfrak{w}_2)_{3,4;5|1,2}^m &= -\frac{1}{6}(\lambda\gamma^m W_5)\mathfrak{t}_{1,2|4;3} - \frac{1}{6}(\lambda\gamma^m W_5)\mathfrak{t}_{1,2|3;4} \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{3}(\lambda\gamma^m W_3)\mathfrak{t}_{1,2|4;5} - \frac{1}{3}(\lambda\gamma^m W_4)\mathfrak{t}_{1,2|3;5} \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{6}(\lambda\gamma^m_{npqrs}\lambda)F_1^{np}F_2^{qr}\left[F_4^{st}(\lambda\gamma_s W_3)(\lambda\gamma_t W_5) + (3 \leftrightarrow 4)\right] \\ Q(\mathfrak{w}_3)_{3,4;5|1,2}^m &= -\frac{1}{6}(\lambda^m_{npqrs}\lambda)F_1^{np}F_2^{qr}F_4^{st}(\lambda\gamma_s W_3)(\lambda\gamma_t W_5) + (3 \leftrightarrow 4) \end{aligned} \quad (4.16)$$

where  $\mathfrak{t}_{1,2|3;4}$  was defined in (3.28). An immediate simplification is obtained by adding  $Q(\mathfrak{w}_2)$  and  $Q(\mathfrak{w}_3)$ . The sum of all three,

$$\mathfrak{w}_{3,4,5|1,2}^m = (\mathfrak{w}_1)_{3,4;5|1,2}^m + (\mathfrak{w}_2)_{3,4;5|1,2}^m + (\mathfrak{w}_3)_{3,4;5|1,2}^m + (5 \leftrightarrow 3, 4) \quad (4.17)$$

has the following BRST transform,

$$Q\mathfrak{w}_{3,4,5|1,2} = -(\lambda\gamma^m W_3)T_{1,2|4;5} - (\lambda\gamma^m W_4)T_{1,2|5;3} - (\lambda\gamma^m W_5)T_{1,2|3;4} \quad (4.18)$$

Thus,  $\mathfrak{w}_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  appears to provide a suitable candidate for  $W_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$ , except for the fact that it does not make the symmetries of  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  manifest.

Indeed, the symmetry of  $T_{1,2|3,4}$  in (3.29) implies that  $QT_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  satisfies the symmetry,

$$QT_{1,2,3|4,5}^m = QT_{3,4,5|1,2}^m + QT_{2,4,5|1,3}^m + QT_{1,4,5|2,3}^m \quad (4.19)$$

The first three terms of  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  in (4.11) satisfy this same relation before applying  $Q$ . Therefore,  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  itself satisfies the following symmetry relation,

$$T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m = T_{3,4,5|1,2}^m + T_{2,4,5|1,3}^m + T_{1,4,5|2,3}^m \quad (4.20)$$

provided  $W_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  also satisfies this relation. The candidate  $\mathfrak{w}_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  we had obtained for  $W_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  satisfies the appropriate BRST relation (4.18) but fails to satisfy (4.20). The following symmetrization of  $\mathfrak{w}_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} W_{1,2,3|4,5}^m &= \frac{1}{2}\mathfrak{w}_{1,2,3|4,5}^m + \frac{1}{6}(\mathfrak{w}_{3,4,5|1,2}^m + \mathfrak{w}_{2,4,5|1,3}^m + \mathfrak{w}_{1,4,5|3,2}^m) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{6}(\mathfrak{w}_{1,2,4|3,5}^m + \mathfrak{w}_{1,2,5|3,4}^m + \mathfrak{w}_{1,3,4|2,5}^m + \mathfrak{w}_{1,3,5|2,4}^m + \mathfrak{w}_{3,2,4|1,5}^m + \mathfrak{w}_{3,2,5|1,4}^m) \end{aligned} \quad (4.21)$$

produces the desired expression for  $W_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  which satisfies both the BRST condition (4.13) and the cyclic symmetry (4.20).

### 4.3 Worldsheets dependence of the vector block

At fixed loop momenta the correlator of the field  $x_+^m$  produces the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor  $\mathcal{I}_{(N)}$  of (3.11) for  $N = 5$ , along with contributions from the insertions of the operator  $\Pi^m$ . In view of the substitution rule (2.24) of the chiral splitting procedure, the latter decomposes into the operator  $\partial x_+^m + \frac{1}{2}\theta\gamma^m\partial\theta$  and the part linear in loop momenta  $p_m^I$  which is holomorphic in  $z$ . The contributions to the chiral correlator  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  linear in  $p_m^I$  is captured by,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^p = 2\pi p_m^I T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m \omega_I(2) \Delta(3,4) \Delta(5,1) + \text{cycl}(1,2,3,4,5) \quad (4.22)$$

where the cyclic sum renders (4.22) invariant under all permutations of the  $z_i$  and external states.<sup>11</sup> This combination has been chosen because it gives an economical expression for a fully Bose symmetric amplitude contribution in terms of cyclic permutations only, without the need to include all 120 permutations of five points. However, (4.22) fails to obey the homology invariance properties (2.20) and (2.21).

To obtain homology invariance of (4.22), we shall now promote the dependence on the loop momenta to combinations which are homology invariant. As a first step, note that the insertion of a single operator  $\partial x^m$  multiplies the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor (3.11) by,

$$\mathcal{P}^m(z_i) = 2\pi i (p^I)^m \omega_I(z_i) + \sum_{j \neq i} k_j^m \partial_i \ln E(z_i, z_j) \quad (4.23)$$

Thanks to overall momentum conservation, the transformation law of the loop momenta given in (2.21), and the  $\mathfrak{A}_I$  and  $\mathfrak{B}_I$ -cycle monodromies (B.17) of the prime form, the one-form  $\mathcal{P}^m(z_i)$  is homology invariant. Hence, any loop momentum contracting the vector

<sup>11</sup>In the superfield formalism for the external vertex operators used here, invariance of the amplitude for  $N$  external states under all  $N!$  permutations of the external states provides the superfield implementation of Bose symmetry for external bosons and Fermi symmetry for external fermions. Full permutation invariance may be verified by repeatedly using the symmetries (3.32) and (4.20) of the forms  $\omega_I(2)\Delta(3,4)$  and the kinematic factor  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$ , respectively.

block  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  in (4.22) will be promoted to the combination (4.23). Since (4.22) additionally features bi-holomorphic  $(1,0)$ -forms  $\Delta(i,j)$  defined in (3.31), it is convenient to define the following vector-valued meromorphic  $(1,0)$ -form in five variables  $z_i$ ,

$$\mathcal{Z}_{1|2,3|4,5}^m = \mathcal{P}^m(1)\Delta(2,3)\Delta(4,5) \quad (4.24)$$

An immediate property which will be crucial soon is as follows,

$$k_1^m \mathcal{Z}_{1|2,3|4,5}^m \mathcal{I}_{(5)} = \partial_1 \left( \mathcal{I}_{(5)} \Delta(2,3)\Delta(4,5) \right) \quad (4.25)$$

On these grounds, the homology-invariant completion of (4.22) is given by,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V = -i T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m \mathcal{Z}_{2|3,4|5,1}^m + \text{cycl}(1,2,3,4,5) \quad (4.26)$$

However, the terms proportional to  $k_j^m T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m \partial_2 \ln E(z_2, z_j) \Delta(3,4)\Delta(5,1)$ , which are present in (4.26) in addition to the contributions of (4.22), do not preserve the Bose permutation invariance of (4.22). At the same time, neither (4.22) nor (4.26) are BRST closed. In the next subsection, we shall show that both shortcomings are cured by adding a loop-momentum independent scalar block.

#### 4.3.1 BRST transformation of $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V$

In preparation for the construction of the scalar block in the next subsection, we begin by calculating and then simplifying the BRST transform of the vector block  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V$ . The BRST transform is obtained by using (4.12) and is given by,

$$\begin{aligned} Q\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V = & (k_1^m V_1 T_{2,3|4,5} + k_2^m V_2 T_{3,1|4,5} + k_3^m V_3 T_{1,2|4,5}) \mathcal{Z}_{2|3,4|5,1}^m \\ & + \text{cycl}(1,2,3,4,5) \end{aligned} \quad (4.27)$$

Using the cyclic permutations to expose a single vertex operator  $V_3$ , we have equivalently,

$$\begin{aligned} Q\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V = & T_{1,2|4,5} V_3 k_3^m (\mathcal{Z}_{2|3,4|5,1}^m + \mathcal{Z}_{4|2,3|5,1}^m) + T_{2,4|5,1} V_3 k_3^m \mathcal{Z}_{3|4,5|1,2}^m \\ & + \text{cycl}(1,2,3,4,5) \end{aligned} \quad (4.28)$$

Using the property (4.25) and the fact that by now only zero mode integrations remain for the vertex operator  $V_3$  which depends only on  $\lambda$  and  $\theta$ , we see that the third term in  $Q\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V \mathcal{I}_{(5)}$  is a total derivative in  $z_3$  which vanishes upon integration over  $z_3$ .

The remaining terms may be simplified as follows. We begin by focussing on the loop momentum dependent part, which is given by,

$$\begin{aligned} k_3^m (\mathcal{Z}_{2|3,4|5,1}^m + \mathcal{Z}_{4|2,3|5,1}^m) \mathcal{I}_{(5)} \Big|_p = & 2\pi i k_3 \cdot p^I (\omega_I(2)\Delta(3,4) + \omega_I(4)\Delta(2,3)) \Delta(5,1) \mathcal{I}_{(5)} \\ = & \partial_3 (\Delta(2,4)\Delta(5,1) \mathcal{I}_{(5)}) \\ & - \sum_{j \neq 3} k_3 \cdot k_j \partial_3 \ln E(3,j) \Delta(2,4)\Delta(5,1) \mathcal{I}_{(5)} \end{aligned} \quad (4.29)$$

where the second line has been obtained from the first by using the first identity in (3.32), and regrouping terms under the total derivative in  $z_3$ . Upon including the terms without loop momenta in the  $\mathcal{Z}$ -functions, and omitting the total derivative contributions, we find,

$$k_3^m (\mathcal{Z}_{2|3,4|5,1}^m + \mathcal{Z}_{4|2,3|5,1}^m) \mathcal{I}_{(5)} = -\mathcal{L}_3^0 \Delta(5,1) \mathcal{I}_{(5)} \quad (4.30)$$

where  $\mathcal{L}_3^0$  is given by (recall that  $s_{ij} = -k_i \cdot k_j$ ),

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}_3^0 = & s_{35} [\partial_2 \ln E(2,5) \Delta(3,4) + \partial_4 \ln E(4,5) \Delta(2,3) + \partial_3 \ln E(3,5) \Delta(4,2)] \\ & + s_{31} [\partial_2 \ln E(2,1) \Delta(3,4) + \partial_4 \ln E(4,1) \Delta(2,3) + \partial_3 \ln E(3,1) \Delta(4,2)] \\ & + s_{32} [\partial_4 \ln E(4,2) \Delta(2,3) + \partial_3 \ln E(3,2) \Delta(4,2)] \\ & + s_{34} [\partial_2 \ln E(2,4) \Delta(3,4) + \partial_3 \ln E(3,4) \Delta(4,2)] \end{aligned} \quad (4.31)$$

The form  $\mathcal{L}_3^0$  is invariant upon homology shifts of the points  $z_i$  around  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  cycles, as may be shown using (B.17) and with the help of momentum conservation, which implies the relation  $s_{35} + s_{31} + s_{32} + s_{34} = 0$ . To render (4.31) manifestly invariant under homology shifts without the need to invoke momentum conservation, it is convenient to add the following combination which vanishes in view of momentum conservation,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}_3^1 = & -\frac{1}{2}(s_{35} + s_{31} + s_{32} + s_{34}) [\partial_4 \ln E(4,2) \Delta(2,3) + \partial_3 \ln E(3,2) \Delta(4,2) \\ & + \partial_2 \ln E(2,4) \Delta(3,4) + \partial_3 \ln E(3,4) \Delta(4,2)] \end{aligned} \quad (4.32)$$

In summary, we have established that, up to total differentials in the vertex operator position points  $z_i$ , the contribution from the vector chiral block  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V$  has BRST transform,

$$Q\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V = T_{1,2|4,5} V_3 \mathcal{L}_3 \Delta(5,1) + \text{cycl}(1,2,3,4,5) \quad (4.33)$$

where  $\mathcal{L}_3 = \mathcal{L}_3^0 + \mathcal{L}_3^1$ . In particular, it is independent of loop momenta.

#### 4.4 Construction of the scalar block

By definition, the scalar block  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^S$  is the part of the chiral amplitude which is independent of loop momenta, and the full chiral amplitude is the sum of both contributions,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)} = \mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V + \mathcal{K}_{(5)}^S \quad (4.34)$$

BRST invariance of the full amplitude imposes the following constraint on the BRST variation of the scalar block,

$$Q\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^S = -T_{1,2|4,5} V_3 \mathcal{L}_3 \Delta(5,1) + \text{cycl}(1,2,3,4,5) \quad (4.35)$$

To render  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  BRST invariant, a solution must be found for  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^S$ , which is independent of the loop momenta, without discarding total derivative terms (which would be allowed for the total chiral amplitude  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)} \mathcal{I}_{(5)}$  but not for  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^S$ ). In the next subsection, we shall construct the so-called BRST ancestors, such as  $S_{3;1|2|4,5}$ , which satisfy,

$$QS_{3;1|2|4,5} = s_{31} V_3 T_{1,2|4,5} \quad (4.36)$$

and obey symmetry properties analogous to  $T_{1,2|4,5}$ , see (3.29),

$$S_{3;1|2|4,5} = S_{3;1|2|5,4} \quad S_{3;1|2|4,5} + S_{3;1|5|2,4} + S_{3;1|4|5,2} = 0 \quad (4.37)$$

With these ancestors at hand, the BRST variation of  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^S$  may now be solved as follows,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^S = \mathcal{L} \Delta(5, 1) + \text{cycl}(1, 2, 3, 4, 5) \quad (4.38)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L} = & \frac{1}{2} (S_{3;2|1|4,5} - S_{3;4|5|1,2}) \left[ \partial_4 \ln E(4, 2) \Delta(2, 3) + \partial_3 \ln E(3, 2) \Delta(4, 2) \right. \\ & \left. - \partial_2 \ln E(2, 4) \Delta(3, 4) - \partial_3 \ln E(3, 4) \Delta(4, 2) \right] \\ = & \frac{1}{2} S_{3;1|2|4,5} \left[ \partial_4 \ln E(4, 2) \Delta(2, 3) + \partial_3 \ln E(3, 2) \Delta(4, 2) + \partial_2 \ln E(2, 4) \Delta(3, 4) \right. \\ & \left. + \partial_3 \ln E(3, 4) \Delta(4, 2) - 2\partial_2 \ln E(2, 1) \Delta(3, 4) \right. \\ & \left. - 2\partial_4 \ln E(4, 1) \Delta(2, 3) - 2\partial_3 \ln E(3, 1) \Delta(4, 2) \right] \\ = & \frac{1}{2} S_{3;5|4|1,2} \left[ \partial_4 \ln E(4, 2) \Delta(2, 3) + \partial_3 \ln E(3, 2) \Delta(4, 2) + \partial_2 \ln E(2, 4) \Delta(3, 4) \right. \\ & \left. + \partial_3 \ln E(3, 4) \Delta(4, 2) - 2\partial_2 \ln E(2, 5) \Delta(3, 4) \right. \\ & \left. - 2\partial_4 \ln E(4, 5) \Delta(2, 3) - 2\partial_3 \ln E(3, 5) \Delta(4, 2) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (4.39)$$

Note that  $\mathcal{L}$  is obtained from  $V_3 T_{1,2|4,5} \mathcal{L}_3$  by formally substituting  $s_{31} V_3 T_{1,2|4,5} \rightarrow S_{3;1|2|4,5}$  and permutations thereof, in keeping with the structure of (4.36).

## 4.5 Scalar block in terms of two-particle superfields

The construction of the scalar block  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^S$  in the previous section relies on the availability of a local scalar superfield  $S_{3;1|2|4,5}$  subject to the BRST variation (4.36). To prove the existence of viable solutions to the BRST condition and obtain their explicit construction, we shall use the multi-particle superfield formalism, which was developed for genus-zero applications in string theory in [27] (see [8] for precursors) and tree-level applications in quantum field theory in [49, 50] (see [51] for precursors). Moreover, multi-particle superfields recursively capture the short-distance singularities of higher-genus correlators [25, 26, 52] and tree-level subdiagrams of loop amplitudes in quantum field theory [48, 53].

### 4.5.1 Preamble

Chiral conformal field theory correlators of conformal primary operators of dimension  $(1, 0)$  on a Riemann surface of genus zero are determined by the positions and residues of their poles and their monodromy. In the absence of monodromy, this statement is equivalent to the well-known result that a meromorphic  $(1, 0)$  form on a sphere is completely determined by the positions and residues of its poles. In particular, the positions of its zeros are completely determined. In a conformal field theory, the singularity structure is determined uniquely by the OPEs of the fields in the correlator, so that on genus-zero surfaces the correlators may be recovered completely from the OPEs. The chiral amplitudes  $\mathcal{F}_{(N)}$  of interest

here are derived from the insertion of chiral vertex operators  $U_i$  of conformal dimension  $(1, 0)$  and  $b$ -ghosts of conformal dimension  $(2, 0)$  whose monodromy is entirely contained in the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor  $\mathcal{I}_{(N)}$ . The reduced amplitudes  $\mathcal{K}_{(N)}$  are monodromy-free.

By contrast, on a surface of higher genus, there exist holomorphic forms of dimension  $(1, 0)$ , so that specifying the positions and the residues of the poles no longer suffices to determine the correlator, and additional information on the contribution of the holomorphic forms is required. Thus, the OPE is generally insufficient to reconstruct the correlators.

#### 4.5.2 Two-particle superfield formalism

The two-particle superfield formalism is based on exploiting the OPE structure of chiral vertex operators  $U_i$ . Controlling the singularities in the OPE (and its multi-particle generalization) allows for a complete determination of the corresponding correlators at genus zero. The operator product of two chiral vertex operators enjoys the following structure [27, 54],

$$U_1(z_1)U_2(z_2) \rightarrow -z_{12}^{-s_{12}-1} \left( \partial\theta^\alpha A_{12\alpha} + \Pi_m A_{12}^m + d_\alpha W_{12}^\alpha + \frac{1}{2} N_{mn} F_{12}^{mn} \right) \quad (4.40)$$

up to total derivatives  $\partial_1$  and  $\partial_2$  of the product of  $z_{12}^{-s_{12}}$  times a single-valued function of  $z_2$  plus non-singular terms. Upon integration of the vertex operators over their positions, the total derivative contributions are expected to cancel.

The prefactor  $z_{12}^{-s_{12}}$  arises from the contractions of the exponentials  $e^{ik_1 \cdot x_+}$  with  $e^{ik_2 \cdot x_+}$  and is contained in the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor, where  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  are the momenta of the external states. The extra factor of  $z_{12}^{-1}$  arises from the Wick contractions of the operator  $\partial x_+^m$  in  $\Pi^m$  with the exponentials  $e^{ik_1 \cdot x_+}$  with  $e^{ik_2 \cdot x_+}$  as well as from the pairwise Wick contractions of the spinor fields. Double poles arise as well, but it was shown [27, 54] that they may all be included in the total derivatives which are being omitted. The composite fields  $A_{12\alpha}, A_{12}^m, W_{12}^\alpha, F_{12}^{mn}$  are referred to as *two-particle superfields*. Their expressions in terms of the one-particle superfields are given as follows,

$$\begin{aligned} (A_{12})_\alpha &= \frac{1}{2} [A_{2\alpha}(ik_2 \cdot A_1) + A_2^m(\gamma_m W_1)_\alpha - (1 \leftrightarrow 2)] \\ (A_{12})^m &= \frac{1}{2} [A_{1p}F_2^{pm} + A_2^m(ik_2 \cdot A_1) + (W_1\gamma^m W_2) - (1 \leftrightarrow 2)] \\ (W_{12})^\alpha &= \frac{1}{4} (\gamma_{mn} W_2)^\alpha F_1^{mn} + W_2^\alpha(ik_2 \cdot A_1) - (1 \leftrightarrow 2) \\ (F_{12})^{mn} &= F_2^{mn}(ik_2 \cdot A_1) + F_2^{[m}{}_p F_1^{n]p} + ik_{12}^{[m} (W_1\gamma^{n]} W_2) - (1 \leftrightarrow 2) \end{aligned} \quad (4.41)$$

where  $k_{12}^m = k_1^m + k_2^m$ . The BRST transforms of the two-particle superfields which will be needed here are given as follows [27],

$$\begin{aligned} QW_{12}^\alpha &= \frac{1}{4} (\lambda\gamma_{mn})^\alpha F_{12}^{mn} + s_{12}(V_1 W_2^\alpha - V_2 W_1^\alpha) \\ QF_{12}^{mn} &= ik_{12}^m (\lambda\gamma^n W_{12}) - ik_{12}^n (\lambda\gamma^m W_{12}) + s_{12}(V_1 F_2^{mn} - V_2 F_1^{mn}) \\ &\quad + s_{12} \left( A_1^n (\lambda\gamma^m W_2) - A_2^n (\lambda\gamma^m W_1) - A_1^m (\lambda\gamma^n W_2) + A_2^m (\lambda\gamma^n W_1) \right) \end{aligned} \quad (4.42)$$

Using the pure spinor constraint, we also deduce the following BRST transforms, which generalize the relations of (2.34) to the case of two-particle superfields,

$$\begin{aligned} Q(\lambda\gamma_s W_{12}) &= s_{12}V_1(\lambda\gamma_s W_2) - s_{12}V_2(\lambda\gamma_s W_1) \\ Q(\lambda\gamma_{mnpqr}\lambda)F_{12}^{mn} &= s_{12}(\lambda\gamma_{mnpqr}\lambda)(V_1F_2^{mn} - V_2F_1^{mn}) \end{aligned} \quad (4.43)$$

Also at higher genus, the two-particle superfield formalism can be applied to determine the singular parts of the correlators. However, since singularities of the OPE do not uniquely determine correlators beyond genus zero, the regular parts of the correlator generically require additional input beyond the multi-particle superfield formalism. In the next subsection, the scalar block  $S_{3;1|2|4,5}$  in the regular parts of the correlator will be obtained by solving (4.36), i.e. taking BRST invariance and monodromies into account. Our solution for  $S_{3;1|2|4,5}$  turns out to be expressible in terms of the vector (4.11) and two-particle superfields, irrespectively of their OPE origin.

#### 4.5.3 Two-particle superfields for the five-point function

To construct the scalar block  $S_{3;1|2|4,5}$  solving (4.36), we begin by defining the following composites of ghost number three, built out of two-particle superfields in analogy with the construction of (3.28) in the four-point case,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{t}_{12,3|4;5} &= (\lambda\gamma_{mnpqr}\lambda)F_{12}^{mn}F_3^{pq}F_4^{rs}(\lambda\gamma_s W_5) \\ \mathbf{t}_{4,5|3;12} &= (\lambda\gamma_{mnpqr}\lambda)F_4^{mn}F_5^{pq}F_3^{rs}(\lambda\gamma_s W_{12}) \\ \mathbf{t}_{4,5|12;3} &= (\lambda\gamma_{mnpqr}\lambda)F_4^{mn}F_5^{pq}F_{12}^{rs}(\lambda\gamma_s W_3) \end{aligned} \quad (4.44)$$

The three composites are obtained from  $\mathbf{t}_{1,2|3;4}$  in (3.28) by substituting the corresponding two-particle superfield for each single-particle field encountered in turn in (3.28). Note that the substitution of  $F_{12}$  for  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  in (3.28) lead to the same expression  $\mathbf{t}_{12,3|4;5}$ . Their BRST transforms are readily obtained from (4.43) and (2.34), and we find,

$$\begin{aligned} Q \mathbf{t}_{12,3|4;5} &= s_{12}V_1 \mathbf{t}_{2,3|4;5} - s_{12}V_2 \mathbf{t}_{1,3|4;5} \\ Q \mathbf{t}_{4,5|3;12} &= s_{12}V_1 \mathbf{t}_{4,5|3;2} - s_{12}V_2 \mathbf{t}_{4,5|3;1} \\ Q \mathbf{t}_{4,5|12;3} &= s_{12}V_1 \mathbf{t}_{4,5|2;3} - s_{12}V_2 \mathbf{t}_{4,5|1;3} \end{aligned} \quad (4.45)$$

Upon defining the following combination by analogy with (3.27),

$$T_{12,3|4,5} = \frac{1}{4} (\mathbf{t}_{12,3|4;5} + \mathbf{t}_{12,3|5;4} + \mathbf{t}_{4,5|12;3} + \mathbf{t}_{4,5|3;12}) \quad (4.46)$$

we verify that its BRST transform is given by,

$$Q T_{12,3|4,5} = s_{12}(V_1 T_{2,3|4,5} - V_2 T_{1,3|4,5}) \quad (4.47)$$

The composite  $T_{12,3|4,5}$  by itself does not yet solve (4.36), but it does exhibit a desired kinematic factor  $s_{12}$ , vertex operators  $V_2$ , and the characteristic building block  $T_{1,3|4,5}$ , all of which are key ingredients on the right side of (4.36).

#### 4.5.4 The scalar block in terms of two-particle superfields

The BRST variation of  $T_{12,3|4,5}$  in (4.47), together with the expression (4.12) for  $QT_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$ , imply the central result of this subsection, namely that the combination,

$$S_{1;2|3|4,5} = \frac{1}{2} \left( i(k_1^m + k_2^m - k_3^m) T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m + T_{12,3|4,5} + T_{13,2|4,5} + T_{23,1|4,5} \right) \quad (4.48)$$

yields the desired BRST variation (4.36). We note here, for later use in section 6, that the expressions for  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  in (4.11) and  $T_{12,3|4,5}$  in (4.46) have been used in [48] to propose a BRST-invariant and manifestly local representation for the integrands of two-loop five-point amplitudes in SYM and maximal supergravity.

The steps in deriving the symmetries (3.29) of the chiral blocks for four external states carry over in identical form to the following relations [48],

$$T_{12,3|4,5} = T_{12,3|5,4} \quad T_{12,3|4,5} + T_{12,4|5,3} + T_{12,5|3,4} = 0 \quad (4.49)$$

As a consequence, the symmetry,

$$S_{1;2|3|4,5} = S_{1;2|3|5,4} \quad (4.50)$$

is manifest from the definition (4.48), whereas the relation,

$$S_{1;2|3|4,5} + S_{1;2|4|5,3} + S_{1;2|5|3,4} \cong 0 \quad (4.51)$$

holds in the BRST cohomology, namely up to a  $Q$ -exact superfield (an equivalence which is denoted here and below by the symbol  $\cong$ ). Similarly, the vector and scalar superfields are related via [48],

$$ik_3^m (T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m + T_{3,4,5|1,2}^m) - T_{13,2|4,5} - T_{23,1|4,5} + T_{34,5|1,2} + T_{35,4|1,2} \cong 0 \quad (4.52)$$

up to a  $Q$ -exact quantity, and it would be interesting to identify its BRST ancestor. It is easy to show via momentum conservation  $s_{13} + s_{23} + s_{34} + s_{35} = 0$  that the left-hand side of (4.52) is BRST-closed, and exactness follows from an explicit check that its components  $\langle \dots \rangle_0$  vanish [55].

More generally, any BRST-closed and *local* combination of permutations of  $k_j^m T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$ , and  $T_{12,3|4,5}$  is checked to be BRST exact as well. Only non-local expressions such as  $s_{12}^{-1} S_{1;2|3|4,5} - s_{13}^{-1} S_{1;3|2|4,5}$  can be in the BRST cohomology. The absence of local cohomology within our alphabet of kinematic building blocks  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  and  $T_{12,3|4,5}$  is crucial for the viability of our approach.<sup>12</sup>

We will later on exploit that any contraction  $k_j^m T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  of the vector with external momenta is expressible via permutations of the scalar building block,

$$\begin{aligned} ik_1^m T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m &= S_{2;1|3|4,5} + S_{3;1|2|4,5} \\ ik_5^m T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m &\cong S_{1;5|4|2,3} + S_{2;5|4|1,3} + S_{3;5|4|1,2} \end{aligned} \quad (4.53)$$

<sup>12</sup>For instance, for four external states it is possible to construct *local* pure spinor superfield expressions in the cohomology of the BRST charge. This fact causes complications when applying the same ideas in an attempt to obtain the non-singular completion of the three-loop four-point correlator from [26].

The first identity is an immediate consequence of the definition (4.48) while the second one is based on (4.52), i.e. only valid up to BRST-exact terms. One can similarly show that

$$S_{1;2|3|4,5} - S_{2;1|3|4,5} = T_{12,3|4,5} \quad (4.54)$$

and, via momentum conservation and repeated application of (4.52), that,

$$S_{5;1|2|3,4} + S_{5;2|1|3,4} + S_{5;3|4|1,2} + S_{5;4|3|1,2} \cong 0 \quad (4.55)$$

the last equality again holding up to BRST exact terms.

## 5 Structure of the chiral amplitude

In this section, we shall simplify the expression for the genus-two chiral amplitude for five external states and further explore its structure. Various re-organizations between the vector block (4.26) and the scalar block (4.38) lead to new representations that in turn expose manifest homology invariance, BRST invariance, or locality.

### 5.1 Theta functions and symmetry on the Jacobian variety

The chiral amplitude obtained in section 4 depends on the positions of the vertex operators and the  $b$ -ghost entirely through the holomorphic Abelian differentials  $\omega_I$ , the prime form  $E(z_i, z_j)$ , and single derivatives of its logarithm  $\partial_i \ln E(z_i, z_j)$ . At genus zero and one, the meromorphic form  $\partial_i \ln E(z_i, z_j)$  is odd under swapping the points  $z_i$  and  $z_j$ , but this property can no longer hold at higher genus since it is a  $(1, 0)$  form in  $z_i$  but a  $(0, 0)$  form in  $z_j$ . Under certain conditions, which will turn out to be met for the 5-point amplitude, the meromorphic form above can be recast directly in terms of  $\omega_I$  and genus-two  $\vartheta$ -functions and their first order derivatives, and in this form a higher-genus version of the swapping symmetry will be recovered. The present subsection is devoted to exhibiting the associated simplifications of the chiral amplitude.

To express the prime form in terms of genus-two  $\vartheta$ -functions we use the Abel-Jacobi map which sends a point  $z_i$  in  $\Sigma$  to a point  $\zeta_i$  in the Jacobian variety  $J(\Sigma)$  (see appendix B),

$$(\zeta_i)_I = \int_{z_0}^{z_i} \omega_I \quad (5.1)$$

Since only differences  $\zeta_i - \zeta_j$  will be needed throughout, all dependence on the choice of the base point  $z_0$  will cancel out. By the definition of the prime form in (B.15), its logarithmic derivative may be decomposed as follows,

$$\partial_i \ln E(z_i, z_j | \Omega) = \omega_I(z_i) g_{i,j}^I - \partial_i \ln h_\nu(z_i) \quad (5.2)$$

where  $\nu$  is an arbitrary odd spin structure,  $h_\nu$  is the corresponding holomorphic  $(\frac{1}{2}, 0)$  form, and  $g_{i,j}^I$  is given by the derivative of the logarithm of the  $\vartheta$ -function for spin structure  $\nu$ ,

$$g_{i,j}^I = \frac{\partial}{\partial \zeta_I} \ln \vartheta[\nu](\zeta | \Omega) \bigg|_{\zeta=\zeta_i-\zeta_j} \quad (5.3)$$

While each term separately on the right side of (5.2) depends on  $\nu$ , their sum is independent of the choice of  $\nu$ . The key advantage of the combination  $g_{i,j}^I$  is the symmetry property,

$$g_{j,i}^I = -g_{i,j}^I \quad (5.4)$$

while the derivative of the prime form  $\partial_i \ln E(z_i, z_j)$  exhibits no such symmetry.

Upon substituting the decomposition (5.2) of the derivative of the prime form into the five-point amplitude, all dependence on the holomorphic  $(1/2, 0)$ -forms  $h_\nu$  cancels between the vector and scalar blocks, provided we choose one and the same odd spin structure for all substitutions. This cancellation is guaranteed by the fact that the full chiral amplitude is a well-defined  $(1, 0)$  form in each vertex point  $z_i$  whose monodromy is given solely by the monodromy of the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor. It may also be verified directly on our final expressions for the vector and scalar blocks.

The contributions involving  $h_\nu$  in the vector block are easy to track from (4.26),

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V \Big|_{h_\nu} = -i\partial_2 \ln h_\nu(z_2) \Delta(3, 4) \Delta(5, 1) k_2^m T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m + \text{cycl}(1, 2, 3, 4, 5) \quad (5.5)$$

where we have used momentum conservation to simplify. A slightly longer calculation is required to isolate the  $h_\nu$ -dependence of the quantity (4.38) in the scalar block,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L} \Big|_{h_\nu} &= \frac{1}{2} (S_{3;2|1|4,5} - S_{3;4|5|1,2}) [\partial_2 \ln h_\nu(z_2) \Delta(3, 4) - \partial_4 \ln h_\nu(z_4) \Delta(2, 3)] \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2} (S_{3;1|2|4,5} + S_{3;5|4|1,2}) [\partial_2 \ln h_\nu(z_2) \Delta(3, 4) + \partial_4 \ln h_\nu(z_4) \Delta(2, 3)] \\ &\cong S_{3;2|1|4,5} \partial_2 \ln h_\nu(z_2) \Delta(3, 4) + S_{3;4|5|1,2} \partial_4 \ln h_\nu(z_4) \Delta(2, 3) \end{aligned} \quad (5.6)$$

The last line has been obtained from the kinematic identity (4.55) in the BRST cohomology. On these grounds, the sum of all contributions  $\partial_i \ln h_\nu(z_i)$  to the overall amplitude can be obtained by combining (4.26) and (4.38),

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{K}_{(5)} \Big|_{h_\nu} &= \partial_2 \ln h_\nu(z_2) \Delta(3, 4) \Delta(5, 1) (-ik_2^m T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m + S_{3;2|1|4,5} + S_{1;2|3|4,5}) \\ &\quad + \text{cycl}(1, 2, 3, 4, 5) \end{aligned} \quad (5.7)$$

The sum of the terms in the parentheses on the first line cancels in view of the first kinematic identity in (4.53) so that  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}|_{h_\nu} = 0$ , and all dependence on  $h_\nu$  for all points  $z_i$  cancels.

## 5.2 Partition into sub-correlators

In view of the results of the previous subsection, we may freely make the following substitutions of all partial derivatives of the logarithm of the prime form within  $\mathcal{K}_5$ ,

$$\partial_i \ln E(z_i, z_j) \rightarrow \omega_I(z_i) g_{i,j}^I \quad (5.8)$$

It follows by inspection that both the contributions from the scalar and the vector blocks may be expressed as linear combinations of holomorphic differential forms of the type  $\omega_I(i) \Delta(j, k) \Delta(\ell, m)$  with coefficients given by the functions  $g_{p,q}^I$ , where  $(i, j, k, \ell, m)$  is a

permutation of  $(1, 2, 3, 4, 5)$ . In view of the identities (3.32), the vector space spanned by all such forms  $\omega_I(i)\Delta(j, k)\Delta(\ell, m)$  is five-dimensional and a basis is given by,<sup>13</sup>

$$\omega_I(1)\Delta(2, 3)\Delta(4, 5) \quad \text{and its 4 cyclic permutations of } (1, 2, 3, 4, 5) \quad (5.9)$$

Decomposing the correlator in the basis (5.9) we have,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)} = \omega_I(1)\Delta(2, 3)\Delta(4, 5)\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I + \text{cycl}(1, 2, 3, 4, 5) \quad (5.10)$$

We shall refer to the quantity  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  and its permutations as *sub-correlators*.

The sub-correlators comprise all the kinematic dependence, and the free index  $I$  is carried by the loop momentum  $p_m^I$  or by a function  $g_{i,j}^I$  in (5.3). The explicit form of  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  resulting from (4.26), (4.38), (4.39), even after reduction to the basis of the five-forms, produces a large number of terms, but it drastically simplifies after use of the kinematic identities in section 4.5.4: In terms of the scalar building block  $S_{1;2|3|4,5}$  in (4.48) and their anti-symmetrized combination  $T_{12,3|4,5}$  in (4.54), the coefficient of each function  $g_{i,j}^I$  reduces to just a single term,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I = & 2\pi p_m^I T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m - g_{1,2}^I T_{12,5|3,4} - g_{1,5}^I T_{15,2|3,4} - g_{2,5}^I T_{25,1|3,4} \\ & - g_{1,3}^I S_{1;3|4|2,5} - g_{2,3}^I S_{2;3|4|1,5} - g_{5,3}^I S_{5;3|4|1,2} \\ & - g_{1,4}^I S_{1;4|3|2,5} - g_{2,4}^I S_{2;4|3|1,5} - g_{5,4}^I S_{5;4|3|1,2} \end{aligned} \quad (5.11)$$

while the coefficient of  $g_{3,4}^I$  vanishes.

As reflected by the notation for its subscripts, the sub-correlator  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  exhibits the same symmetries as the vector building block  $T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m$  in (4.11). It is manifest from (5.11) that  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  is symmetric with respect to labels that are separated by a comma,

$$\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I = \mathcal{K}_{1,5,2|3,4}^I = \mathcal{K}_{5,2,1|3,4}^I \quad \mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I = \mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|4,3}^I \quad (5.12)$$

Moreover, the symmetry relation (4.20) of  $T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m$  carries over to

$$\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I + \mathcal{K}_{4,1,2|3,5}^I + \mathcal{K}_{3,1,2|4,5}^I \cong \mathcal{K}_{3,4,5|1,2}^I \quad (5.13)$$

as can be verified from (4.54) as well as the symmetries (4.50) and (4.51) of  $S_{1;2|3|4,5}$ .

Based on (5.12) and (5.13), one can explain from a simple analogy why the correlator (5.10) is not only cyclically invariant but in fact Bose symmetric in the five external legs: We have shown that  $T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m$  and  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  have identical symmetry properties, and the correlator (5.10) is related to its loop-momentum dependent part  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^p$  in (4.22) via

<sup>13</sup>The number of independent such forms follows from group theory. Each  $\omega_I(j)$  is an  $SL(2)$  doublet and the number of doublets occurring in the five-fold tensor product of doublets is five. To see concretely that all the forms  $\omega_I(i)\Delta(j, k)\Delta(\ell, m)$  are linear combinations of the forms in (5.9), we first use cyclic permutations to set  $i = 1$ . There are three such forms,  $\omega_I(1)\Delta(2, 3)\Delta(4, 5)$ ,  $\omega_I(1)\Delta(2, 4)\Delta(3, 5)$  and  $\omega_I(1)\Delta(2, 5)\Delta(3, 4)$ . The second form is a linear combination of the first and third by the second identity in (3.32) while the third form may be decomposed using the first identity of (3.32),  $\omega_I(1)\Delta(2, 5)\Delta(3, 4) = -\omega_I(2)\Delta(3, 4)\Delta(5, 1) - \omega_I(5)\Delta(1, 2)\Delta(3, 4)$ . This cyclic basis was already tacitly used for the loop-momentum dependent part (4.22) in the opening line for the vector correlator.

$p_m^I T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m \leftrightarrow \mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$ . Hence, permutation invariance of  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^p$  carries over to the full correlator in (5.10).

Note that (4.48) together with (5.11) reduce the superspace components  $\langle \mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I \rangle_0$  to permutations of  $\langle T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m \rangle_0$  and  $\langle T_{51,2|3,4} \rangle_0$ . The bosonic components of  $\langle T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m \rangle_0$  and  $\langle T_{51,2|3,4} \rangle_0$  can be found in the files available for download from [56].

### 5.3 Manifesting homology invariance

We shall now verify that the sub-correlator  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  in (5.11) by itself is homology invariant as defined in (2.21), so that the full amplitude is single-valued on  $\Sigma$  after integration over the loop momenta. This statement is stronger than the statement that the sum  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  of all sub-correlators is homology invariant. The result will imply that, upon multiplication by the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor  $\mathcal{I}_{(5)}$ , the contribution of each sub-correlator  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I \mathcal{I}_{(5)}$  to the chiral amplitude gives rise to the expected monodromies (2.20) all by itself.

The result is non-trivial because each function  $g_{i,j}^I$  has non-trivial monodromy as a point  $z_\ell$  is shifted by a  $\mathfrak{B}_L$ -cycle (but is invariant under an  $\mathfrak{A}_L$  shift),

$$\begin{aligned} z_i &\rightarrow z_i + \delta_{i\ell} \mathfrak{B}_L & g_{i,j}^I &\rightarrow g_{i,j}^I + 2\pi i \delta_L^I (\delta_{j\ell} - \delta_{i\ell}) \\ p^I &\rightarrow p^I - \delta_L^I k_\ell \end{aligned} \quad (5.14)$$

which is readily established using the transformation laws of the prime form in (B.17). Implementing the full homology transformations of (2.21) on the loop momenta as well, we see that  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  is invariant provided the following identities hold,

$$\begin{aligned} 2\pi i (T_{12,5|3,4} + T_{15,2|3,4} + S_{1;3|4|2,5} + S_{1;4|3|2,5}) - 2\pi (k_1)_m T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m &\cong 0 \\ -2\pi i (S_{1;3|4|2,5} + S_{2;3|4|1,5} + S_{5;3|4|1,2}) - 2\pi (k_3)_m T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m &\cong 0 \end{aligned} \quad (5.15)$$

The validity of these identities can be easily checked in the BRST cohomology by means of (4.53), (4.54), and (4.55). As a consequence, the integral over loop momenta of the chiral amplitude will be a single-valued function on  $\Sigma$  (see section 6).

Actually, an even stronger property may be obtained by decomposing  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  into smaller blocks, each of which will by itself be homology invariant. The key to this re-organization of  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  is the following combination of  $g_{i,j}^I$  functions,

$$G_{i,j,k}^I = g_{i,j}^I + g_{j,k}^I + g_{k,i}^I \quad (5.16)$$

for three distinct points  $z_i, z_j, z_k$ . The functions  $G_{i,j,k}^I$  are single-valued in view of the definition of  $g_{i,j}^I$  and (5.14), but they do depend on the spin structure  $\nu$  involved in defining  $g_{i,j}^I$ . We note that the combination  $\omega_I(z_i) G_{i,j,k}^I$  is the unique Abelian differential of the third kind in  $z_i$  having simple poles at  $z_j$  and  $z_k$  with residues  $\pm 1$ , whose  $\mathfrak{A}_J$  period is  $\partial_J \ln \vartheta[\nu](\zeta_j - \zeta_k)$ .

The same kinematic identities (5.15) also allow us to decompose  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  into smaller blocks each of which is homology invariant. To see this we recast  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  as follows,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I &\cong (2\pi p_m^I - ik_{2m} g_{1,2}^I - ik_{3m} g_{1,3}^I - ik_{4m} g_{1,4}^I - ik_{5m} g_{1,5}^I) T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m - G_{1,2,5}^I T_{25,1|3,4} \\ &\quad - G_{1,2,3}^I S_{2;3|4|1,5} - G_{1,5,3}^I S_{5;3|4|1,2} - G_{1,2,4}^I S_{2;4|3|1,5} - G_{1,5,4}^I S_{5;4|3|1,2} \end{aligned} \quad (5.17)$$

The expressions (5.11) and (5.17) agree in the BRST cohomology. To see this, we note that the coefficients of  $g_{2,5}^I$ ,  $g_{2,3}^I$ ,  $g_{5,3}^I$ ,  $g_{2,4}^I$ ,  $g_{5,4}^I$  and  $p_m^I$  are manifestly the same, while the differences of the coefficients of  $g_{1,2}^I$ ,  $g_{1,3}^I$ ,  $g_{1,4}^I$  and  $g_{1,5}^I$  are BRST exact by permutations of (5.15). Inspection of (5.17) reveals that the combination of  $p_m^I$  and  $k_{jm}g_{1,j}^I$  in the first line is homology invariant by itself thanks to momentum conservation. Indeed, it can be viewed as the genus-two uplift of the generalized elliptic integrand  $E_{1|2,3,4,5}^m$  in the genus-one five-point function [9, 57]. Furthermore, each remaining term in (5.17) is single-valued by itself since its world-sheet dependence is through the single-valued functions  $G_{i,j,k}^I$ .

#### 5.4 Manifesting BRST invariance

Though the correlator  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  is BRST invariant by construction, it is instructive to see how this is realized in the decomposition (5.10) into sub-correlators. Combining the BRST transformations of the ingredients of  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  from (4.12), (4.36), and (4.47), we find,

$$\begin{aligned} Q\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I &= T_{1,2|3,4}V_5\left(2\pi ip^I \cdot k_5 - \sum_{j \neq 5} s_{5j} g_{5,j}^I\right) + T_{2,5|3,4}V_1\left(2\pi ip^I \cdot k_1 - \sum_{j \neq 1} s_{1j} g_{1,j}^I\right) \\ &\quad + T_{1,5|3,4}V_2\left(2\pi ip^I \cdot k_2 - \sum_{j \neq 2} s_{2j} g_{2,j}^I\right) \end{aligned} \quad (5.18)$$

Multiplying this result by  $\omega_I(1)\Delta(2,3)\Delta(4,5)$  and summing over all cyclic permutations gives the BRST variation of  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  in the following form,

$$\begin{aligned} Q\mathcal{K}_{(5)} &= \left(\Delta(2,3)\Delta(4,5)T_{2,5|3,4} + \Delta(2,5)\Delta(4,3)T_{2,3|4,5}\right)V_1 \\ &\quad \times \omega_I(1)\left(2\pi ip^I \cdot k_1 - \sum_{j \neq 1} g_{1,j}^I s_{1j}\right) + \text{cycl}(1,2,3,4,5) \end{aligned} \quad (5.19)$$

where we have used cyclic permutations and the first identity in (3.32) to regroup all terms in  $\omega_I(1)$ . The factor on the second line is readily recognized as the logarithmic derivative  $\partial_{z_1} \ln \mathcal{I}_{(5)}$  of the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor (3.11)

$$\partial_1 \ln \mathcal{I}_{(5)} = \omega_I(1)\left(2\pi ip^I \cdot k_1 - s_{12} g_{1,2}^I - s_{13} g_{1,3}^I - s_{14} g_{1,4}^I - s_{15} g_{1,5}^I\right) \quad (5.20)$$

so that we find,

$$\begin{aligned} Q(\mathcal{K}_{(5)}\mathcal{I}_{(5)}) &= \left(\Delta(2,3)\Delta(4,5)T_{2,5|3,4} + \Delta(2,5)\Delta(4,3)T_{2,3|4,5}\right)V_1\partial_1 \mathcal{I}_{(5)} \\ &\quad + \text{cycl}(1,2,3,4,5) \end{aligned} \quad (5.21)$$

Thus, the effect of acting by the BRST charge is to produce a total derivative in the vertex points (recall that only the  $z_1$ -independent zero mode parts of  $V_1$  and  $T_{i,j|k,\ell}$  remain).

The above steps in checking BRST invariance serve as guidance to find a manifestly BRST invariant representation of  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}\mathcal{I}_{(5)}$  by adding suitable total derivatives. In the same way as the manifestly homology-invariant representation (5.17) was constructed by adding

BRST exact terms to (5.11), we shall now add the following total derivatives,

$$\begin{aligned}\widehat{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)}\mathcal{I}_{(5)} = & \mathcal{K}_{(5)}\mathcal{I}_{(5)} - \frac{1}{4} \left\{ \left( \frac{S_{1;2|3|4,5}}{s_{12}} + \frac{S_{1;3|2|4,5}}{s_{13}} + \frac{S_{1;4|5|2,3}}{s_{14}} + \frac{S_{1;5|4|2,3}}{s_{15}} \right) \Delta(5,2) \Delta(3,4) \partial_{z_1} \mathcal{I}_{(5)} \right. \\ & + \left( \frac{S_{1;2|5|3,4}}{s_{12}} + \frac{S_{1;5|2|3,4}}{s_{15}} + \frac{S_{1;3|4|2,5}}{s_{13}} + \frac{S_{1;4|3|2,5}}{s_{14}} \right) \Delta(2,3) \Delta(4,5) \partial_{z_1} \mathcal{I}_{(5)} \\ & \left. + \text{cycl}(1,2,3,4,5) \right\}\end{aligned}\quad (5.22)$$

to express each sub-correlator in terms of BRST invariants superfield combinations. The factor of  $\frac{1}{4}$  arises from averaging over the four possible ancestors  $S_{1;2|3|4,5}/s_{12}$ ,  $S_{1;3|2|4,5}/s_{13}$ ,  $S_{1;4|5|2,3}/s_{14}$  and  $S_{1;5|4|2,3}/s_{15}$  of the BRST variation  $V_1 T_{2,3|4,5}$ . By expanding the derivatives of the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor and expanding the five-forms in  $\widehat{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)}$  in terms of the five-element basis in (5.10),

$$\widehat{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)} = \omega_I(1) \Delta(2,3) \Delta(4,5) \widehat{\mathcal{K}}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I + \text{cycl}(1,2,3,4,5) \quad (5.23)$$

we find that the coefficients of the sub-correlator associated with (5.22) are given by,

$$\begin{aligned}\widehat{\mathcal{K}}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I = & 2\pi p_m^I C_{5,1,2|3,4}^m - s_{12} g_{1,2}^I (C_{1;2|5|3,4} - C_{2;1|5|3,4}) \\ & - s_{15} g_{1,5}^I (C_{1;5|2|3,4} - C_{5;1|2|3,4}) - s_{25} g_{2,5}^I (C_{2;5|1|3,4} - C_{5;2|1|3,4}) \\ & - s_{13} g_{1,3}^I C_{1;3|4|2,5} - s_{23} g_{2,3}^I C_{2;3|4|1,5} - s_{35} g_{5,3}^I C_{5;3|4|1,2} \\ & - s_{14} g_{1,4}^I C_{1;4|3|2,5} - s_{24} g_{2,4}^I C_{2;4|3|1,5} - s_{45} g_{5,4}^I C_{5;4|3|1,2}\end{aligned}\quad (5.24)$$

The superfields now enter through the following non-local combinations,

$$C_{1;3|4|2,5} = \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{3S_{1;3|4|2,5}}{s_{13}} - \frac{S_{1;4|3|2,5}}{s_{14}} - \frac{S_{1;2|5|3,4}}{s_{12}} - \frac{S_{1;5|2|3,4}}{s_{15}} \right) \quad (5.25)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}C_{5,1,2|3,4}^m = & T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m - \frac{i}{4} k_1^m \left( \frac{S_{1;2|5|3,4}}{s_{12}} + \frac{S_{1;5|2|3,4}}{s_{15}} + \frac{S_{1;3|4|2,5}}{s_{13}} + \frac{S_{1;4|3|2,5}}{s_{14}} \right) \\ & - \frac{i}{4} k_2^m \left( \frac{S_{2;1|5|3,4}}{s_{12}} + \frac{S_{2;5|1|3,4}}{s_{25}} + \frac{S_{2;3|4|1,5}}{s_{23}} + \frac{S_{2;4|3|1,5}}{s_{24}} \right) \\ & - \frac{i}{4} k_5^m \left( \frac{S_{5;1|2|3,4}}{s_{15}} + \frac{S_{5;2|1|3,4}}{s_{25}} + \frac{S_{5;3|4|1,2}}{s_{35}} + \frac{S_{5;4|3|1,2}}{s_{45}} \right)\end{aligned}\quad (5.26)$$

Using (4.12) and (4.36), it is straightforward to verify that both the scalar and the vector building block are BRST invariant,

$$QC_{5,1,2|3,4}^m = 0 \quad QC_{1;2|5|3,4} = 0 \quad (5.27)$$

The BRST invariants (5.25) and (5.26) can be viewed as the analogues of the homology-invariant building blocks in (5.17) — in both cases, the respective invariance of the sub-correlator is made manifest term by term. As another virtue of these BRST invariants, their superspace components  $\langle C_{1;2|5|3,4} \rangle_0$  and  $\langle C_{5,1,2|3,4}^m \rangle_0$  confirm the equivalence of the

present approach in the *minimal* pure spinor formalism with the *non-minimal* one: The bosonic components are unchanged (up to identical normalization factors) when trading the building blocks  $T_{12,3|4,5}$  and  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  [48] in the minimal pure spinor variables for their counterparts in the non-minimal formalism (denoted by  $T_{12,3|4,5}$  and  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  in [25]).<sup>14</sup>

The expansion of the two-loop BRST invariants (5.25) and (5.26) in terms of gluon polarizations is related to the one-loop invariants  $C_{1|2,3,4,5}^m$  and  $C_{1|23,4,5}$  from [59] that completely determine the five-point correlator [57]. Using the files for the bosonic components of  $\langle C_{1|2,3,4,5}^m \rangle_0$  and  $\langle C_{1|23,4,5} \rangle_0$  available to download from [56] one can verify,

$$\begin{aligned} C_{1,2,3|4,5}^m &\cong -\frac{1}{180}s_{45}C_{1|2,3,4,5}^m + \frac{1}{360}(k_4^m - k_5^m)s_{45}C_{1|45,2,3} \\ &+ \frac{1}{720}k_2^m(s_{45}(C_{1|24,3,5} + C_{1|25,3,4}) + (s_{13} + s_{23})C_{1|23,4,5}) \\ &+ \frac{1}{720}k_3^m(s_{45}(C_{1|34,2,5} + C_{1|35,2,4}) - (s_{12} + s_{23})C_{1|23,4,5}) \\ &- \frac{1}{720}(k_1^m + k_2^m + k_3^m)(s_{24}C_{1|24,3,5} + s_{25}C_{1|25,3,4} + (2 \leftrightarrow 3)) \end{aligned} \quad (5.28)$$

and

$$C_{1;3|4|2,5} \cong \frac{1}{720}(s_{35}C_{1|35,2,4} + s_{45}C_{1|45,2,3} - 2s_{34}C_{1|34,2,5} - s_{23}C_{1|23,4,5} - s_{24}C_{1|24,3,5}) \quad (5.29)$$

These identities reduce the components  $\langle \hat{\mathcal{K}}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I \rangle_0$  to one-loop building blocks and will play an important role in the discussion of S-duality in a companion paper [30]. The identities (5.28) and (5.29) generalize the pure spinor superspace relation between the four-point kinematic factors at one and two loops, and it would be similarly interesting to find a superspace proof analogous to [47].

We emphasize that the individual sub-correlators  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I \mathcal{I}_{(5)}$  and  $\hat{\mathcal{K}}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I \mathcal{I}_{(5)}$  cannot be identified since total derivatives only arise from the interplay between different permutations.

## 5.5 Simultaneous homology invariance and BRST invariance

One can repeat the steps of subsection 5.3 to obtain manifestly homology invariant and manifestly BRST invariant sub-correlators (5.24). For this purpose, we rewrite the kinematic identities of section 4.5.4 in terms of the BRST invariants (5.26) and (5.25),

$$\begin{aligned} ik_2^m C_{5,1,2|3,4}^m &= s_{12}C_{1;2|5|3,4} + s_{25}C_{5;2|1|3,4} \\ ik_3^m C_{5,1,2|3,4}^m &\cong s_{13}C_{1;3|4|2,5} + s_{23}C_{2;3|4|1,5} + s_{35}C_{5;3|4|1,2} \\ 0 &\cong s_{12}C_{2;1|5|3,4} + s_{25}C_{2;5|1|3,4} + s_{23}C_{2;3|4|1,5} + s_{24}C_{2;4|3|1,5} \\ 0 &\cong C_{2;1|5|3,4} + C_{2;1|4|5,3} + C_{2;1|3|4,5} \\ 0 &= C_{2;1|5|3,4} - C_{2;1|5|4,3} \end{aligned} \quad (5.30)$$

<sup>14</sup>For the genus-three four-point amplitude, the building blocks in the minimal pure spinor formalism [58] and the non-minimal one [26] turn out to be inequivalent, due to the existence of non-trivial, local expressions in the BRST cohomology.

These identities can be obtained formally by promoting  $T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m \rightarrow C_{5,1,2|3,4}^m$  and  $S_{1;3|4|2,5} \rightarrow s_{13}C_{1;3|4|2,5}$  in the relations among local building blocks in section 4.5.4. Moreover, the same operations formally map the manifestly local correlator representation (5.11) to the manifestly BRST invariant one in (5.24). There is an additional identity among BRST invariants,

$$0 = C_{2;1|5|3,4} + C_{2;5|1|3,4} + C_{2;3|4|1,5} + C_{2;4|3|1,5} \quad (5.31)$$

which directly follows from the definition (5.25) and does not seem to have any counterpart for the local superfields.

It is easy to show using the identities of (5.30) that the manifestly BRST-invariant sub-correlator (5.24) is cohomologically equivalent to,

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\mathcal{K}}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I &\cong \left( 2\pi p_m^I - i \sum_{j=2}^5 (k_j)_m g_{1,j}^I \right) C_{5,1,2|3,4}^m - s_{25} G_{1,2,5}^I (C_{2;5|1|3,4} - C_{5;2|1|3,4}) \\ &\quad - s_{23} G_{1,2,3}^I C_{2;3|4|1,5} - s_{35} G_{1,5,3}^I C_{5;3|4|1,2} - s_{24} G_{1,2,4}^I C_{2;4|3|1,5} - s_{45} G_{1,5,4}^I C_{5;4|3|1,2} \end{aligned} \quad (5.32)$$

This representation of the sub-correlator manifests both BRST invariance and homology invariance in each term, see (5.16) for the definition of the functions  $G_{a,b,c}^I$ . Moreover, one can verify that the symmetry property (4.20) of  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  carries over,

$$\hat{\mathcal{K}}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I + \hat{\mathcal{K}}_{4,1,2|3,5}^I + \hat{\mathcal{K}}_{3,1,2|4,5}^I \cong \hat{\mathcal{K}}_{3,4,5|1,2}^I \quad (5.33)$$

This is most conveniently shown by repeating the steps that led to (5.13) with the above relations between BRST invariants and using (5.30). Note that (5.32) also follows from the formal replacements  $T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m \rightarrow C_{5,1,2|3,4}^m$  and  $S_{1;3|4|2,5} \rightarrow s_{13}C_{1;3|4|2,5}$  in the manifestly local and homology-invariant correlator representation (5.17).

Similar representations with manifest homology invariance and BRST invariance have been studied for multi-particle correlators at one loop. The one-loop analogues of the representation (5.30) of  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  were the starting point to unravel double-copy structures in one-loop open-string amplitudes [9, 57]. The combinatorial structure of the one-loop correlators in the reference is identical to those of gravitational matrix elements with an insertion of the supersymmetrized curvature invariant  $\mathcal{R}^4$ . Accordingly, it would be interesting if the two-loop five-point correlators based on (5.32) could be related to matrix elements of a similar gravitational counterterm of type  $D^4\mathcal{R}^4$  and  $D^2\mathcal{R}^5$ .

## 5.6 The simplified correlator in terms of prime forms

One can also rewrite the simplified representations of the five-point correlator in terms of prime forms  $\partial_i \ln E(z_i, z_j)$  instead of the function  $g_{i,j}^I$  of the Abel maps. Given the permutation symmetric contribution  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^p$  in (4.22) linear in the loop momentum and the scalar quantity,

$$\mathcal{R}_{12} = \partial_1 \ln E(1, 2) [S_{1;2|3|4,5} \Delta(2, 4) \Delta(3, 5) + S_{1;2|4|3,5} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)] + (1 \leftrightarrow 2) \quad (5.34)$$

we claim that a BRST equivalent representation of the five-point correlator is given by,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)} = \mathcal{K}_{(5)}^p + \sum_{1 \leq i < j}^5 \mathcal{R}_{ij} \quad (5.35)$$

The expression (5.34) for  $\mathcal{R}_{12} = \mathcal{R}_{21}$  is permutation symmetric in 3, 4, 5 up to BRST-exact terms by the relations (3.32) and (4.37) of the forms and the superfields. The  $(\frac{1}{2}, 0)$ -forms in the decomposition (5.2) of the prime form can be easily checked to cancel from the permutation sum in (5.35) by repeated use of the identity (4.55) in the BRST cohomology. Hence, one can effectively substitute  $\partial_i \ln E(z_i, z_j) \rightarrow \omega_I(z_i) g_{i,j}^I$  within (5.35) and expand the correlator in terms of five-forms  $\omega_I(1) \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)$ . By matching the resulting expression with the basis of five-forms in (5.10), we reproduce the sub-correlator in (5.11), validating (5.35) as an alternative representation of the five-point correlator.

The building blocks  $\mathcal{R}_{ij}$  in (5.34) conveniently track the short-distance singularities of the correlator as pairs of punctures collide: the simple pole as  $z_1 \rightarrow z_2$  stems solely from setting  $\partial_1 \ln E(1, 2) \rightarrow z_{12}^{-1}$  as well as  $\partial_2 \ln E(2, 1) \rightarrow -z_{12}^{-1}$  and  $\Delta(1, j) \rightarrow \Delta(2, j)$  in (5.34). This leads to a simple form of the residues

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Res}_{z_1 \rightarrow z_2} \mathcal{K}_{(5)} &= \text{Res}_{z_1 \rightarrow z_2} \mathcal{R}_{12} \\ &= (S_{1;2|3|4,5} - S_{2;1|3|4,5}) \Delta(2, 4) \Delta(3, 5) \\ &\quad + (S_{1;2|4|3,5} - S_{2;1|4|3,5}) \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5) \\ &= T_{12,3|4,5} \Delta(2, 4) \Delta(3, 5) + T_{12,4|3,5} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5) \end{aligned} \quad (5.36)$$

where (4.54) has been used in passing to the last line. On the kinematic pole  $(k_1 + k_2)^{-2}$  resulting from integration over  $z_1 - z_2$ , the two-particle superfields factorize correctly on the single particle superfields of  $T_{x,3|4,5}$  with a cubic vertex of the gauge-multiplet peeled off, see for instance appendix A.4 of [25].

### 5.6.1 Comparison with the OPE correlator from [25]

The non-minimal pure spinor prescription was used in [25] to determine the genus-two five-point correlator up to holomorphic terms, namely terms with no worldsheet singularities. These holomorphic terms are of course essential to obtain the full amplitude and for extracting the effective interactions in the low energy expansion beyond the lowest order [30]; indeed for four-point scattering they are responsible for the entire correlator.

The result of the OPE analysis can be written as<sup>15</sup>

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{K}_{(5)}^{\text{OPE}} &= [2\pi p_m^I T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m \Delta(5, 1) \omega_I(z_2) \Delta(3, 4) + \text{cycl}(1, 2, 3, 4, 5)] \\ &\quad + \left[ \partial_1 \ln E(1, 2) (T_{12,3|4,5} \Delta(2, 4) \Delta(3, 5) + T_{12,4|3,5} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)) + (1, 2|1, 2, 3, 4, 5) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (5.37)$$

where the notation  $+(i, j|1, 2, 3, 4, 5)$  means a sum over all ordered choices of  $i$  and  $j$  from the set  $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$  for a total of  $\binom{5}{2}$  terms.

<sup>15</sup>In quoting equation (5.40) from [25] we used the notation  $\Pi_m^I \rightarrow 2\pi p_m^I$  and replaced  $\eta_{12} \rightarrow \partial_1 \ln E(1, 2)$ . This last replacement rectifies the definition used in that reference in which  $\eta_{ij}$  was the derivative of the full Green function without stripping the zero modes.

In order to relate (5.37) to the full correlator (5.35) which includes regular terms we first observe that the first line of (5.37) is equal to  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^p$  in (4.22). To relate the scalar terms we rewrite  $\mathcal{R}_{12}$  using (4.54)

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{R}_{12} = & \partial_1 \ln E(1, 2) (T_{12,3|4,5} \Delta(2, 4) \Delta(3, 5) + T_{12,4|3,5} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)) \\ & + S_{2;1|3|4,5} (\partial_1 \ln E(1, 2) \Delta(2, 4) \Delta(3, 5) + \partial_2 \ln E(2, 1) \Delta(1, 4) \Delta(3, 5)) \\ & + S_{2;1|4|3,5} (\partial_1 \ln E(1, 2) \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5) + \partial_2 \ln E(2, 1) \Delta(1, 3) \Delta(4, 5))\end{aligned}\quad (5.38)$$

The first line of (5.38) contains singularities in the worldsheet and reproduces the corresponding terms in (5.37). The second and third lines are non-singular on  $\Sigma$  and therefore could not be determined in the OPE analysis of [25].

Using (5.38), the full five-point correlator at two loops (5.35) can be written as,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)} = \mathcal{K}_{(5)}^{\text{OPE}} + [\mathcal{K}_{(12),3,4,5}^{\text{reg}} + (1, 2|1, 2, 3, 4, 5)] \quad (5.39)$$

where  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^{\text{OPE}}$  is the result (5.37) from [25] while

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{K}_{(12),3,4,5}^{\text{reg}} \equiv & S_{2;1|3|4,5} (\partial_1 \ln E(1, 2) \Delta(2, 4) \Delta(3, 5) + \partial_2 \ln E(2, 1) \Delta(1, 4) \Delta(3, 5)) \\ & + S_{2;1|4|3,5} (\partial_1 \ln E(1, 2) \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5) + \partial_2 \ln E(2, 1) \Delta(1, 3) \Delta(4, 5))\end{aligned}\quad (5.40)$$

is a non-singular function on the worldsheet.

It is interesting to observe that the regular functions in (5.40) are natural from an OPE perspective as they correspond to the difference in performing the OPEs as  $z_1 \rightarrow z_2$  or as  $z_2 \rightarrow z_1$ , a distinction which is absent at genus zero or one. Together with the existence of the building block  $S_{1;2|3|4,5}$ , this observation suggests a way to find the regular completion of singular correlators such as (5.37). The relative coefficient between the singular and regular pieces can then be fixed by imposing overall BRST invariance. In hindsight, applied to the correlator (5.37), this procedure yields the full five-point correlator derived in the previous sections.

## 5.7 An alternative correlator in terms of prime forms

A downside of the correlator representation (5.35) in terms of prime forms is that the loop momentum dependence occurs via  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^p$  in (4.22) instead of the homology-invariant combinations  $\mathcal{Z}_{1|2,3|4,5}^m$  in (4.24). As an alternative to (5.35) with more transparent monodromy properties, the correlator can be rewritten as,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{K}_{(5)} = & -i\eta_{mn} T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m \mathcal{Z}_{1|2,3|4,5}^n \\ & + \partial_1 \ln E(1, 2) (S_{1;2|3|4,5} \Delta(2, 5) \Delta(3, 4) + S_{5;2|1|3,4} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)) \\ & + \partial_1 \ln E(1, 3) (S_{1;3|2|4,5} \Delta(2, 5) \Delta(3, 4) + S_{2;3|4|1,5} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5) + S_{5;3|4|1,2} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)) \\ & + \partial_1 \ln E(1, 4) (S_{1;4|5|2,3} \Delta(2, 5) \Delta(3, 4) + S_{2;4|3|1,5} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5) + S_{5;4|3|1,2} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)) \\ & + \partial_1 \ln E(1, 5) (S_{1;5|4|2,3} \Delta(2, 5) \Delta(3, 4) + S_{2;5|1|3,4} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)) \\ & + \text{cycl}(1, 2, \dots, 5)\end{aligned}\quad (5.41)$$

Once again, the dependence on the half-differentials cancels<sup>16</sup> between the contributions  $(k_1)_m T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m \partial_1 \ln h_\nu(1)$  from  $\mathcal{Z}_{1|2,3|4,5}^n$  and the remaining terms in (5.41), so one can again replace  $\partial_i \ln E(i, j) \rightarrow \omega_I(i) g_{i,j}^I$ . Under this rule,  $\mathcal{Z}_{1|2,3|4,5}^n$  directly reproduces the coefficient of  $T_{5,1,2|3,4}^m$  in the manifestly homology-invariant representation (5.17) of the sub-correlator. The contributions proportional to  $G_{i,j,k}^I$  to (5.17) in turn can be recovered from the explicit prime forms in (5.41). For the latter class of terms, the symmetries (3.32) of the forms and kinematic identities including (4.55) need to be used, and different terms in the cyclic orbit of (5.41) contribute to the sub-correlator  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^I$  multiplying the basis form  $\omega_I(1) \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)$ .

## 6 Type II and Heterotic 5-point amplitudes

In this section, we shall use the chiral amplitude  $\mathcal{F}_{(5)}$ , derived in the previous section, to construct the genus-two amplitude for five external states for the Type II and Heterotic strings. We begin by recalling the structure of the chiral amplitude,

$$\mathcal{F}_{(5)} = \langle \mathcal{K}_{(5)} \rangle_0 \mathcal{I}_{(5)} \quad (6.1)$$

where  $\mathcal{I}_{(5)}$  is the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor (3.11) and  $\langle \mathcal{K}_{(5)} \rangle_0$  is the integral (3.5) of the chiral correlator  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  over the zero modes of  $\lambda$  and  $\theta$ . The chiral correlator  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)} = \mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V + \mathcal{K}_{(5)}^S$  was initially constructed in section 4 from two terms  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^V$  and  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^S$  each of which individually is a single-valued function of the vertex points  $z_i$  upon integration over loop momenta, and whose sum is BRST closed even though neither term individually is BRST closed. Section 5 then presents various simplified forms of  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  where different subsets of its properties are made manifest. For the purpose of integrating over loop momenta, it is the forms (5.35) and (5.41) that will be particularly convenient.

### 6.1 Assembling both chiralities for closed string amplitudes

Scattering amplitudes of closed strings are obtained by pairing left-moving and right-moving chiral blocks and integrating over loop momenta  $p_I$  in  $\mathbb{R}^{10}$ , over vertex operator positions  $z_i$  in  $\Sigma$ , and over the moduli space  $\mathcal{M}_2$  of compact genus-two Riemann surfaces, which we parametrize locally by the period matrix  $\Omega_{IJ}$  in the Siegel upper half-plane [2, 3, 28]. As a result, the amplitude takes the following form, up to an overall numerical normalization factor that remains to be determined by unitarity,

$$\mathcal{A}_{(5)} = \delta \left( \sum_{i=1}^5 k_i \right) \int_{\mathcal{M}_2} |d^3 \Omega|^2 \int_{\Sigma^5} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{20}} dp \mathcal{F}_{(5)}(z_i, k_i, p^I) \bar{\mathcal{F}}_{(5)}(z_i, -k_i^*, -p^I) \quad (6.2)$$

where  $d^3 \Omega = d\Omega_{11} d\Omega_{12} d\Omega_{22}$  produces the holomorphic top form on  $\mathcal{M}_2$ . For each of the closed superstring theories,  $\mathcal{F}_{(5)}$  is the supersymmetric chiral amplitude given in (6.1), while the second chiral amplitude  $\bar{\mathcal{F}}_{(5)}$  depends on the type of superstrings under consideration. In either case, the combined integrals will be absolutely convergent for purely imaginary

<sup>16</sup>This cancellation is based on the kinematic identities (4.53), (4.55) and occurs separately for all five terms in the cyclic orbit.

values of the kinematic variables  $s_{ij}$ . The amplitude obtained this way may be analytically continued to values of  $s_{ij}$  throughout the complex plane thereby producing the expected physical poles and branch cuts, as was shown explicitly for the genus-one amplitude in [29].

The dependence on the polarization vectors, polarization spinors, or internal degrees of freedom for the Heterotic string of both  $\mathcal{F}_{(5)}$  and  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}_{(5)}$  will be suppressed throughout. In all cases, the product  $\mathcal{F}_{(5)}\tilde{\mathcal{F}}_{(5)}$  includes the absolute value of the chiral Koba-Nielsen factor  $\mathcal{I}_{(5)}$  as a universal factor. This factor is conveniently rearranged as follows,

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathcal{I}_{(5)}|^2 &= \exp \left\{ -2\pi Y_{IJ} \hat{p}^I \cdot \hat{p}^J + \sum_{i < j} s_{ij} \mathcal{G}(z_i, z_j) \right\} \\ \hat{p}^I &= p^I + Y^{IJ} \sum_i k_i \operatorname{Im} \int_{z_0}^{z_i} \omega_J \end{aligned} \quad (6.3)$$

where  $\mathcal{G}$  is the Arakelov Green function of (2.12), which may be replaced by the string Green function (2.11) since the total momentum is conserved. In addition to the exponential factor, both  $\mathcal{F}_{(5)}$  and  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}_{(5)}$  generically also have explicit dependence on the momenta  $p^I$  through a polynomial prefactor, which it will be convenient to trade for a dependence on the shifted momentum  $\hat{p}^I$ . Note that the measure  $dp$  is unaffected by this shift.

In preparation for integrating over the loop momenta, we shall recast the dependence of the supersymmetric chiral correlator (6.1) on the loop momentum in a form that exhibits the single-valued Arakelov Green function  $\mathcal{G}$ . To do so, we eliminate  $\partial_i \ln E(i, j)$  from  $\mathcal{Z}_{1|2,3|4,5}^m$  in favor of  $-\partial_i \mathcal{G}(i, j)$  plus Abelian differentials, Abel-Jacobi integrals and the shifts  $\gamma(z_i)$  in (2.13). The Abelian differentials and integrals precisely combine with the loop momenta into their shifted versions  $\hat{p}$  in (6.3), and we obtain,

$$\mathcal{Z}_{1|2,3|4,5}^m = \left( 2\pi i (\hat{p}^I)^m \omega_I(1) - \sum_{j=2}^5 k_j^m \partial_1 \mathcal{G}(1, j) + k_1^m \partial_1 \gamma(z_1) \right) \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5) \quad (6.4)$$

The remaining terms in the correlator representation (5.41) are independent of loop momenta and cancel all instances of  $\partial_i \gamma(z_i)$ . We now rearrange  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  as follows,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)} = \mathcal{W} + 2\pi i \hat{p}_m^I \mathcal{V}_I^m \quad (6.5)$$

where the combinations  $\mathcal{V}_I^m$  are similar to (6.4) and  $\mathcal{W}$  collects the scalar leftover terms,

$$\mathcal{V}_I^m = T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m \omega_I(2) \Delta(3, 4) \Delta(5, 1) + \operatorname{cycl}(1, 2, 3, 4, 5) \quad (6.6)$$

$$\mathcal{W} = iT_{5,1,2|3,4}^m \sum_{j=2}^5 k_j^m \partial_1 \mathcal{G}(1, j) \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5) \quad (6.7)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & -\partial_1 \mathcal{G}(1, 2) (S_{1;2|3|4,5} \Delta(2, 5) \Delta(3, 4) + S_{5;2|1|3,4} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)) \\ & -\partial_1 \mathcal{G}(1, 3) (S_{1;3|2|4,5} \Delta(2, 5) \Delta(3, 4) + S_{2;3|4|1,5} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5) + S_{5;3|4|1,2} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)) \\ & -\partial_1 \mathcal{G}(1, 4) (S_{1;4|5|2,3} \Delta(2, 5) \Delta(3, 4) + S_{2;4|3|1,5} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5) + S_{5;4|3|1,2} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)) \\ & -\partial_1 \mathcal{G}(1, 5) (S_{1;5|4|2,3} \Delta(2, 5) \Delta(3, 4) + S_{2;5|1|3,4} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)) \\ & + \operatorname{cycl}(1, 2, 3, 4, 5) \end{aligned}$$

and the cyclic sum in the expression for  $\mathcal{W}$  is to be applied to all five lines. To obtain the expression (6.7) for  $\mathcal{W}$ , we have substituted (6.4) into (5.41) and replaced everywhere  $\partial_i \ln E(i, j)$  by  $-\partial_i G(i, j) - 2\pi i \omega_I(i) Y^{IJ} \text{Im} \int_{z_j}^{z_i} \omega_J$ . One can then observe that all such terms proportional to  $Y^{IJ}$  cancel in the cyclic sum between  $\mathcal{W}$  and  $2\pi i \hat{p}_m^I \mathcal{V}_I^m$ . This cancellation follows from the same manipulations that were described in section 5.7 to relate (5.41) to (5.17). Finally, we have replaced all derivatives  $\partial_i G(i, j)$  of the string Green function (2.11) by derivatives  $\partial_i \mathcal{G}(i, j)$  of the Arakelov Green function (2.12), since the difference  $\partial_i \gamma(z_i)$  between the two cancels in the complete chiral correlator, by the same mechanism which ensures the cancellation of the derivatives of the half-forms  $\partial_i \ln h_\nu(z_i)$  in section 5.1. In the new representation (6.7), both  $\mathcal{V}_I^m$  and  $\mathcal{W}$  are now manifestly single-valued in  $z_i$ .

While the expression (6.7) for the scalar correlator is adapted to the representation (5.41) of  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$ , we can bring the loop-momentum-independent part  $\mathcal{W}$  into an alternative form that is more reminiscent of representation (5.35). For this purpose, the manipulations of the forms and kinematic factors that relate (5.35) to (5.41) can be readily repeated with  $\hat{p}^I$  and  $-\partial_i G(i, j)$  in place of  $p^I$  and  $\partial_i \ln E(i, j)$ . Hence, we can immediately rewrite (6.7) by performing the appropriate replacements in (5.35),

$$\mathcal{W} = \sum_{1 \leq i < j}^5 \mathcal{Q}_{ij} \quad (6.8)$$

where  $\mathcal{Q}_{ij}$  is given by the following simple combinations,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{Q}_{12} = & -\partial_1 \mathcal{G}(1, 2) [S_{1;2|3|4,5} \Delta(2, 4) \Delta(3, 5) + S_{1;2|4|3,5} \Delta(2, 3) \Delta(4, 5)] \\ & - \partial_2 \mathcal{G}(2, 1) [S_{2;1|3|4,5} \Delta(1, 4) \Delta(3, 5) + S_{2;1|4|3,5} \Delta(1, 3) \Delta(4, 5)] \end{aligned} \quad (6.9)$$

To proceed further, we distinguish between the different string theories.

## 6.2 Type II amplitudes

The complete amplitudes are simplest to organize for the Type II superstrings, since the massless sectors of these theories consist only of the unique Type IIA or Type IIB supergravity multiplet. Type IIA and Type IIB amplitudes involve the chiral amplitude  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}_{(5)} = \langle \tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)} \rangle_0 \overline{\mathcal{I}_{(5)}}$ , where  $\tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)}$  is obtained from  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  by substituting the left-moving vector and spinor polarizations by the right-moving vector and spinor polarizations of opposite (Type IIA) or same space-time chirality (Type IIB), respectively. In either case, the structure of  $\tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)}$  is as follows,

$$\tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)} = \tilde{\mathcal{W}} + 2\pi i \hat{p}_m^I \tilde{\mathcal{V}}_I^m \quad (6.10)$$

With the help of this expression, the loop momentum integrations may now be carried out,

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^{20}} dp \mathcal{K}_{(5)} \overline{\tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)}} |\mathcal{I}_{(5)}|^2 = \frac{1}{\det(2Y)^5} \left( \mathcal{W} \overline{\tilde{\mathcal{W}}} - \pi Y^{IJ} \mathcal{V}_I^m \overline{\tilde{\mathcal{V}}_J^m} \right) \prod_{i < j} e^{s_{ij} \mathcal{G}(i, j)} \quad (6.11)$$

The full amplitude therefore becomes,

$$\mathcal{A}_{(5)} = \delta \left( \sum_{i=1}^5 k_i \right) \int_{\mathcal{M}_2} d\mu \frac{1}{\det(2Y)^2} \int_{\Sigma^5} \left\langle \mathcal{W} \overline{\tilde{\mathcal{W}}} - \pi Y^{IJ} \mathcal{V}_I^m \overline{\tilde{\mathcal{V}}_J^m} \right\rangle_0 \prod_{i < j} e^{s_{ij} \mathcal{G}(i, j)} \quad (6.12)$$

where  $\langle \dots \rangle_0$  collects the zero-mode integrals (3.5) of the  $\theta^\alpha$  and  $\lambda^\alpha$  in both chiral halves. Three of the powers of  $\det(2Y)$  have been regrouped to produce the modular invariant measure on  $\mathcal{M}_2$ , given by,

$$d\mu = \frac{|d^3\Omega|^2}{\det(2Y)^3} \quad (6.13)$$

The remaining two factors of  $\det(2Y)$  combine with the products of bi-holomorphic forms  $\Delta$  of (3.31) and their complex conjugates so that the combinations,

$$\frac{\Delta(i, j) \overline{\Delta(k, \ell)}}{\det(2Y)} \quad (6.14)$$

are modular invariant. In summary, after integration over loop momenta, the resulting integrand for the scattering amplitude is invariant under the full modular group  $\text{Sp}(4, \mathbb{Z})$ .

Scattering amplitudes for Type II strings compactified on a torus  $T^d$  are obtained as usual by restricting the polarizations of the external particles and inserting a sum over solitonic configurations of the compact coordinates [60], namely the Siegel-Narain theta series

$$\Gamma_{d,d,2}(g, B|\Omega) = \det(2Y)^{d/2} \sum_{\substack{m_\alpha^I \in \mathbb{Z}^{2d} \\ n^{I,\alpha} \in \mathbb{Z}^{2d}}} e^{-\pi \mathcal{L}^{IJ} Y_{IJ} + 2\pi i m_\alpha^I n^{J,\alpha} X_{IJ}}, \quad (6.15)$$

where  $X = \text{Re } \Omega$  and  $m_\alpha^I, n^{I,\alpha}$  are the momenta and windings along the  $\alpha$ -th direction of the torus, and

$$\mathcal{L}^{IJ} = (m_\alpha^I + B_{\alpha\gamma} n^{I,\gamma}) g^{\alpha\beta} (m_\beta^J + B_{\beta\delta} n^{J,\delta}) + n^{I,\alpha} g_{\alpha\beta} n^{J,\beta} \quad (6.16)$$

where  $g_{\alpha\beta}$  and  $B_{\alpha\beta}$  are the constant metric and B-field along the torus, and  $g^{\alpha\beta}$  is the inverse metric, measured in units of  $\alpha'$ . The Siegel-Narain theta series (6.15) is invariant under modular transformations in  $\text{Sp}(4, \mathbb{Z})$  and T-duality transformations in  $O(d, d, \mathbb{Z})$  acting on the usual way on  $(g, B)$ . The prefactor  $\det(2Y)^{d/2}$  cancels the part of factor  $\det(2Y)^5$  in (6.11) which would have come from integrating over the loop momenta  $p_I^\alpha$ .

### 6.3 Heterotic string amplitudes

We shall now construct the five-point genus-two amplitude for Heterotic strings. In this case, the massless sector in ten dimensions consists of two types of multiplets, namely the  $\mathcal{N} = 1$  supergravity (SG) multiplet and the  $\mathcal{N} = 1$  super Yang-Mills (SYM) multiplet with gauge group  $E_8 \times E_8$  (for the HE string) or  $\text{Spin}(32)/\mathbb{Z}_2$  (for the HO string) [61, 62].

Similar to the Type II superstring, the five-point amplitude for Heterotic strings is given as an integral (6.2) of the product of the chiral amplitude  $\mathcal{F}_{(5)}$  in (6.1) for the superstring, and the (conjugate of) the chiral amplitude  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}_{(5)}$  for the bosonic string, compactified on the tori associated with the root lattice of  $E_8 \times E_8$  or  $\text{Spin}(32)/\mathbb{Z}_2$ , respectively. The latter is given by the product of the chiral measure for the bosonic string at genus two, given by the inverse of the Igusa cusp form<sup>17</sup>  $\Psi_{10}$  [63, 64], times the correlator of the

<sup>17</sup>Recall that  $\Psi_{10} = \prod_\kappa \vartheta^2[\kappa](0)$  where the product runs over all even spin structures.

right-moving vertex operators, given by either,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{V}_i^{\text{SYM}}(z_i) &= \sum_a t_i^a j^a(z_i) e^{ik_i \cdot x_+(z_i)} \\ \mathcal{V}_i^{\text{SG}}(z_i) &= \tilde{\varepsilon}_i^* \cdot \left( \partial x_+(z_i) + 2\pi p^I \omega_I(z_i) \right) e^{ik_i \cdot x_+(z_i)}\end{aligned}\quad (6.17)$$

where  $t_i^a$  is the gauge field polarization,  $j^a(z_i)$  is the corresponding holomorphic current, and  $\tilde{\varepsilon}_i^*$  is the polarization vector for the right movers. For the five-point amplitude, each external state may belong either to the SYM or the SG multiplet, thereby giving rise to six different types of amplitudes. Schematically representing the states in the SYM multiplet by  $F$  (the field strength), and the states in the SG multiplet by  $R$  (including the Riemann tensor, the anti-symmetric tensor field, and the dilaton), the six possible structures correspond to  $R^5, R^4 F, R^3 F^2, R^2 F^3, R F^4$ , and  $F^5$ . Since the gauge groups for both Heterotic theories are simple, it is immediate that the amplitude corresponding to  $R^4 F$  vanishes.

Correlators of the chiral vertex operators  $\mathcal{V}_i^{\text{SG}}$  for the supergravity multiplet may be computed straightforwardly using the Wick contractions (2.19). Although gauge invariance under  $\tilde{\varepsilon}_i^m \rightarrow \tilde{\varepsilon}_i^m + \alpha k_i^m$  is not immediately manifest, it is possible to recast the result in terms of the gauge invariant combinations  $f_i^{mn} = \tilde{\varepsilon}_i^m k_i^n - \tilde{\varepsilon}_i^n k_i^m$  by discarding exact differentials which do not contribute to the integrated amplitude. This process was carried out for the four-point amplitude in sections 12.4 and 12.5 of [16] and may be generalized to the five-point amplitude in a straightforward, if tedious, manner which is beyond the scope of this paper. Decomposing the resulting chiral correlator in the same way as in (6.10), in terms of the shifted loop momenta  $\hat{p}_m^I$  in (6.3), the integral over loop momenta (6.12) produces a term proportional to  $Y^{IJ}(\tilde{\varepsilon}_i^* \cdot \mathcal{V}_J)$ , which has no analogue for the four-point amplitude.

For scattering amplitudes of SYM multiplets, it is convenient to fermionize the 16 chiral compact bosons into 32 chiral worldsheet fermions  $\lambda^I(z)$  for  $I = 1, \dots, 32$  (not to be confused with the pure spinor ghost field  $\lambda^\alpha$ ). For the case of HO, all 32 fermions transform in the defining representation of  $\text{SO}(32)$  and have the same spin structure  $\kappa$  (independent, and to be distinguished from the spin structure on the supersymmetric side). For the case of HE, the 32 fermions are split into two groups of 16 transforming under the defining representation of  $\text{SO}(16)_1 \times \text{SO}(16)_2$ , the maximal orthogonal subgroup of  $E_8 \times E_8$ , and  $\kappa = (\kappa_1, \kappa_2)$  labels the corresponding independent spin structures  $\kappa_1$  and  $\kappa_2$ . In absence of fermionic insertions, the partition functions for the internal fermions are given by

$$\mathcal{Z}_{\text{HO}} = \sum_{\kappa} \vartheta[\kappa](0)^{16} \quad \mathcal{Z}_{\text{HE}} = \sum_{\kappa_1, \kappa_2} \vartheta[\kappa_1](0)^8 \vartheta[\kappa_2](0)^8 \quad (6.18)$$

where the sum runs over all even spin structures.

The current  $j^a(z)$  appearing in the vertex operator (6.17) for either of the two Heterotic strings is given in terms of  $\lambda^I(z)$  by,

$$j^a(z) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{I, J=1}^{32} T_{IJ}^a \lambda^I(z) \lambda^J(z) \quad (6.19)$$

Here,  $T_{IJ}^a$  are the anti-symmetric generators in the defining representations of the Lie algebras of  $\text{SO}(32)$  and  $\text{SO}(16)_1 \times \text{SO}(16)_2$ , respectively. The remaining generators of  $E_8 \times E_8$  are accounted for by spin fields, which will not be needed here. The correlators of the holomorphic fields  $\lambda^I(z)$  are given by,

$$\langle \lambda^I(z) \lambda^J(w) \rangle_\kappa = -\delta^{IJ} S_\kappa(z, w) \quad (6.20)$$

where  $S_\kappa$  is the Szegő kernel for the spin structure  $\kappa$  for the HO theory, and  $\kappa$  equals  $\kappa_1$  or  $\kappa_2$  for the HE theory, depending on whether both  $I, J$  belong to  $\text{SO}(16)_1$  or  $\text{SO}(16)_2$ . Self-contractions on the current are absent so that  $\langle j^a(z) \rangle_\kappa = 0$ . The current correlators required for the case of the four-point amplitude [16] are,<sup>18</sup>

$$\begin{aligned} \langle j^{a_1}(z_1) j^{a_2}(z_2) \rangle_\kappa &= \frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(T^{a_1} T^{a_2}) S_\kappa(z_1, z_2)^2 \\ \langle j^{a_1}(z_1) j^{a_2}(z_2) j^{a_3}(z_3) \rangle_\kappa &= \text{tr}(T^{a_1} T^{a_2} T^{a_3}) S_\kappa(1, 2) S_\kappa(2, 3) S_\kappa(3, 1) \\ \langle j^{a_1}(z_1) j^{a_2}(z_2) j^{a_3}(z_3) j^{a_4}(z_4) \rangle_\kappa &= -\text{tr}(T^{a_1} T^{a_2} T^{a_3} T^{a_4}) S_\kappa(1, 2) S_\kappa(2, 3) S_\kappa(3, 4) S_\kappa(4, 1) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{4} \text{tr}(T^{a_1} T^{a_2}) \text{tr}(T^{a_3} T^{a_4}) S_\kappa(1, 2)^2 S_\kappa(3, 4)^2 + (2 \leftrightarrow 3, 4) \end{aligned} \quad (6.21)$$

where we denote as usual  $S_\kappa(i, j) = S_\kappa(z_i, z_j)$ . For the five-point amplitude, we require the correlators of (6.21) as well as the following five-point correlators,

$$\begin{aligned} \left\langle \prod_{i=1}^5 j^{a_i}(z_i) \right\rangle_\kappa &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{(i,j|k,\ell,m)} \text{tr}(T^{a_i} T^{a_j}) \text{tr}(T^{a_k} T^{a_\ell} T^{a_m}) S_\kappa(i, j)^2 S_\kappa(k, \ell) S_\kappa(\ell, m) S_\kappa(m, k) \\ &\quad + \sum_{(i,j,k,\ell)} \text{tr}(T^{a_1} T^{a_i} T^{a_j} T^{a_k} T^{a_\ell}) S_\kappa(1, i) S_\kappa(i, j) S_\kappa(j, k) S_\kappa(k, \ell) S_\kappa(\ell, 1) \end{aligned} \quad (6.22)$$

where the first sum is over all 10 inequivalent partitions of five into 2+3, and the second sum is over all 12 permutations of 2,3,4,5 modulo reversal  $(i, j, k, \ell) \rightarrow (\ell, k, j, i)$ .

The spin structure sums required for amplitudes with up to five SYM states can be expressed in terms of the Siegel modular forms  $\Psi_{4k}$  of weight  $4k$ ,

$$\Psi_{4k} = \sum_\kappa \vartheta[\kappa](0)^{8k} \quad (6.23)$$

and the following correlators,

$$\begin{aligned} F_{4k}^{(2)}(z_1, z_2) &= \sum_\kappa \vartheta[\kappa](0)^{8k} S_\kappa(1, 2)^2 \\ F_{4k}^{(3)}(z_1, z_2, z_3) &= \sum_\kappa \vartheta[\kappa](0)^{8k} S_\kappa(1, 2) S_\kappa(2, 3) S_\kappa(3, 1) \\ F_{4k}^{(2,2)}(z_1, z_2; z_3, z_4) &= \sum_\kappa \vartheta[\kappa](0)^{8k} S_\kappa(1, 2)^2 S_\kappa(3, 4)^2 \\ F_{4k}^{(4)}(z_1, z_2, z_3, z_4) &= \sum_\kappa \vartheta[\kappa](0)^{8k} S_\kappa(1, 2) S_\kappa(2, 3) S_\kappa(3, 4) S_\kappa(4, 1) \end{aligned} \quad (6.24)$$

---

<sup>18</sup>Note that  $\text{tr}(T^{a_1} \cdots T^{a_n}) = 0$  whenever generators of both  $\text{SO}(16)_1$  and  $\text{SO}(16)_2$  occur under the trace.

$$F_{4k}^{(2,3)}(z_1, z_2; z_3, z_4, z_5) = \sum_{\kappa} \vartheta[\kappa](0)^{8k} S_{\kappa}(1, 2)^2 S_{\kappa}(3, 4) S_{\kappa}(4, 5) S_{\kappa}(5, 3)$$

$$F_{4k}^{(5)}(z_1, z_2, z_3, z_4, z_5) = \sum_{\kappa} \vartheta[\kappa](0)^{8k} S_{\kappa}(1, 2) S_{\kappa}(2, 3) S_{\kappa}(3, 4) S_{\kappa}(4, 5) S_{\kappa}(5, 1)$$

The first sum  $F_{4k}^{(2)}$  can be computed in terms of  $\Psi_{4k}$  through [16, eq. 12.7],

$$F_{4k}^{(2)}(z, w) = \Psi_{4k} \partial_z \partial_w \ln E(z, w) + \frac{\pi i}{2} \omega_I(z) \omega_J(w) \partial^{IJ} \Psi_{4k} \quad (6.25)$$

where  $\partial_{IJ}$  is the derivative with respect to  $\Omega_{IJ}$  for  $I \leq J$ . The product of three Szegő kernels may be decomposed onto a sum of squares of Szegő kernels times functions that are independent of spin structures [31], so that  $F_{4k}^{(3)}$  may be similarly decomposed onto a sum of  $F_{4k}^{(2)}$  functions. Similarly, it will be shown in [31] that the products of four and five Szegő kernels may all be decomposed onto sums of the product of two squares of Szegő kernels, so that  $F_{4k}^{(4)}$ ,  $F_{4k}^{(2,3)}$ , and  $F_{4k}^{(5)}$  may all be decomposed onto sums of  $F_{4k}^{(2,2)}$  with known coefficients.

We end with perhaps the simplest example of a Heterotic amplitude for five external SYM states, two belonging to the first  $E_8$ , and three belonging to the second  $E_8$ . The corresponding chiral amplitude may be read off from the ingredients presented above, and is given by,

$$\tilde{\mathcal{F}}_{(5)} = \frac{1}{4\Psi_{10}(\Omega)} \text{tr}(T^{a_1} T^{a_2}) \text{tr}(T^{a_3} T^{a_4} T^{a_5}) F_4^{(2)}(z_1, z_2) F_4^{(3)}(z_3, z_4, z_5) \quad (6.26)$$

where  $a_1, a_2$  refer to  $\text{SO}(16)_1$  while  $a_3, a_4, a_5$  refer to  $\text{SO}(16)_2$ .

As usual, the HE and HO Heterotic strings become indistinguishable after compactifying on a torus  $T_d$ . The chiral integrand  $\mathcal{F}_{(5)}$  is obtained by replacing the partition function  $\mathcal{Z}_{\text{HO}}$  or  $\mathcal{Z}_{\text{HE}}$  in (6.18) by the Siegel-Narain theta series  $\Gamma_{d+16, d, 2}$ , with suitable insertions of lattice momenta for each current as in the four-point amplitude discussed in [65].

## 7 The supergravity limit

In this section we shall study the field theory limit of the string amplitudes for five external massless states derived in the earlier sections of this paper. In the limit  $\alpha' \rightarrow 0$ , keeping the external momenta  $k_i$  fixed, the Type II superstring amplitudes are expected to reduce to the two-loop field theory amplitudes of  $\mathcal{N} = 2$  supergravity, while in the Heterotic strings the amplitudes are expected to reduce to those of  $\mathcal{N} = 1$  supergravity plus super-Yang-Mills [66]. For four-dimensional external states, the loop integrand for two-loop supergravity was determined in [67] using the spinor-helicity formalism and color-kinematics duality [68, 69] (see [70] for a review). This result was later extended to external states in ten dimensions in [48] by making use of pure spinor superspace.

Whether the external states of the superstring amplitude are in a supergravity or super-Yang-Mills multiplet, the corresponding field theory amplitudes involve a sum over the six Feynman graph topologies depicted in figure 1. As we shall demonstrate below for Type II superstrings (and sketch for the Heterotic and Type I cases), the field theory limit

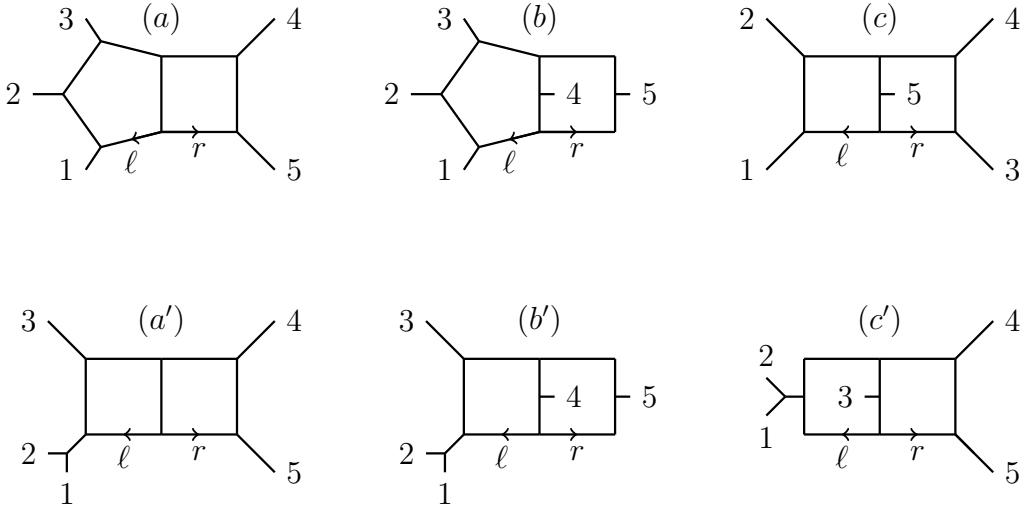
of the integrand over loop momenta, moduli, and vertex points of the superstring amplitude for five external massless states, derived in earlier sections, reduces, at leading order in  $\alpha'$ , to the integrand over loop momenta and Feynman parameters of the corresponding supergravity amplitude [48, 67]. The precise matching of these integrands provides a strong consistency check on the validity of our construction. Higher-order terms in the  $\alpha'$  expansion of the integrated amplitude produce higher-derivative effective interactions to the supergravity and/or super-Yang-Mills Lagrangian which will be investigated in a companion paper [30].

To leading order in the  $\alpha'$  expansion, the amplitude is dominated by the contribution from maximally degenerate Riemann surfaces. In order to study these degenerations systematically, it will be useful to interpret the vertex operator positions as punctures on the Riemann surface, and use the Deligne-Mumford compactification of the moduli space of punctured Riemann surfaces, in the present case of genus two with five punctures. All degenerations are then obtained by a finite sequence of the following two elementary degenerations,

1. the separating degeneration, in which a trivial homology cycle shrinks, thereby degenerating the surface into two disconnected surfaces;
2. the non-separating degeneration, in which a non-trivial homology cycle shrinks, thereby degenerating the dual cycle into a long and thin funnel.

The degeneration by which two or more punctures collide is equivalent, in the Deligne-Mumford compactification, to a separating degeneration in which a sphere with three or more punctures separates from the remaining surface. The maximal degeneration of the Riemann surface is obtained by a maximal sequence of separating and non-separating degenerations in which for example all the  $\mathfrak{A}$ -cycles of the surface shrink, and the  $\mathfrak{B}$ -cycles become long thin funnels. These funnels are effectively connected by internal interaction vertices, just as in field theory Feynman diagrams. A maximal degeneration may be described by a trivalent graph  $\Gamma$ , sometimes known as a tropical Riemann surface (see e.g. [71, 72]), which reproduces the on-shell Feynman graphs of quantum field theory. The vertices of the graph correspond to genus zero components with three punctures, while the edges  $e_a$  correspond to the long thin funnels. The lengths  $L_a \in \mathbb{R}^+$  and twists  $\sigma_a \in [0, 2\pi[$  of the funnels provide an appropriate set of coordinates on the moduli space near the maximal degeneration locus.

In the limit where all  $L_a$  are scaled to infinity at the same rate, the string integrand is expected to reduce to the field theory integrand in the world-line formalism [73–75], where  $L_a$  is the Schwinger parameter for the propagator on edge  $e_a$ . Upon using the chiral splitting procedure in string theory, the momentum  $p^I$  is identified with the loop momentum in field theory [76]. For the pure spinor superstring, the string integrand is expected to reduce to the field theory integrand in pure spinor world-line formalism [77, 78] and the double-copy structure of the loop integrand in supergravity should be manifest [53, 79, 80].



**Figure 1.** The six graphs contributing to two-loop five-point amplitudes in maximally supersymmetric Yang-Mills and supergravity [67]. The reducible diagrams  $a', b', c'$  were denoted  $d, e, f$  respectively in [48].



**Figure 2.** 1PI versus 1PR two-loop skeletons.

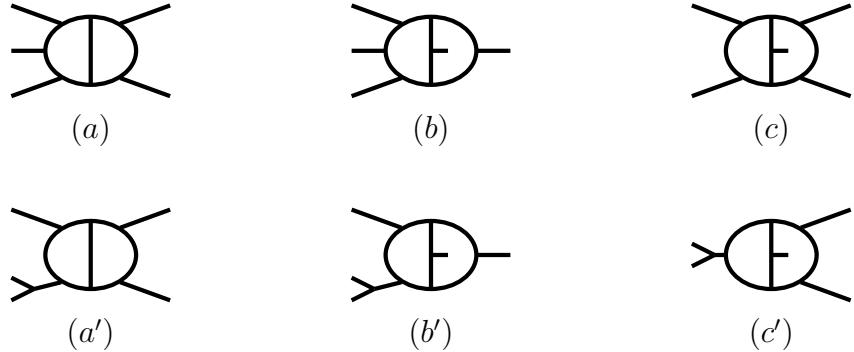
### 7.1 Maximal degeneration of a genus-two Riemann surface

For a compact genus-two Riemann surface without punctures, there are two possible maximal degenerations, corresponding to the one-particle irreducible (1PI) or one-particle reducible (1PR) two-loop skeletons depicted in figure 2. In principle, there can also be contact terms supported on ‘‘figure-eight’’ diagrams where the length of the middle edge in either of the two skeletons shrinks to zero.<sup>19</sup>

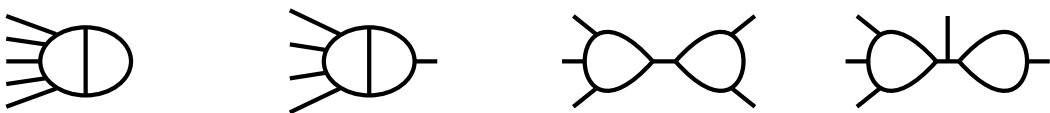
For a genus-two Riemann surface with punctures, the various different maximal degenerations correspond to the various different ways of attaching external legs to either skeleton of the case without punctures, possibly by forming trees, such that the resulting graph is still connected. For five punctures, many different connected graphs may be drawn. It will be convenient to arrange the graphs into two classes (1) graphs which contain no triangle or bubble subgraphs; and (2) all other graphs. All graphs obtained from the 1PR vacuum graph fall in class (2).

All the graphs in class (1) are represented in figure 3 and, by inspection, are seen to be in one-to-one correspondence with the field theory graphs of figure 1. The graphs in class (2) correspond to field theory graphs that vanish in view of the extended supersymmetry of

<sup>19</sup>Such contact terms are known to arise in the field theory limit of Heterotic amplitudes [65] and Type I partition functions in a magnetic background [81].



**Figure 3.** All maximal degeneration graphs of class (1), namely containing no subgraphs with one, two, or three external edges..



**Figure 4.** Some of the maximal degeneration graphs of class (2), namely containing one or several subgraphs with one, two, or three external edges, whose contributions to the genus-two amplitude with five massless external states vanish.

the corresponding supergravity or super-Yang-Mills theory, a property that is sometimes referred to as “no bubble or triangles” [82]. In both Type II and Heterotic superstring theories, on-shell amplitudes with one, two, or three external massless states are expected to vanish. General arguments to this effect have been given in [83, 84] while the result was proven by explicit calculation in the genus-two case in [16] for both Type II and Heterotic strings. Our proof here that the genus-two five-point amplitude reduces to the corresponding supergravity amplitude in the  $\alpha' \rightarrow 0$  limit, will be based on showing that the diagrams of class (1) precisely match those of field theory and that those of class (2) vanish.

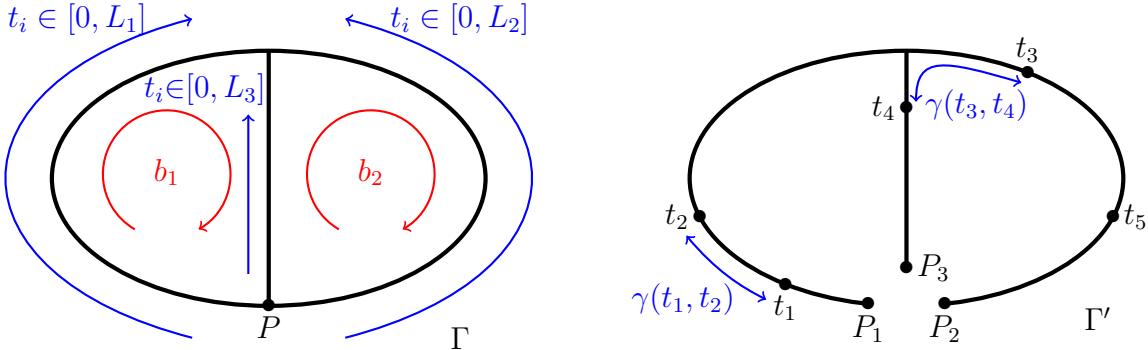
The Schwinger parameters  $L_1, L_2, L_3$  for the two-loop 1PI skeleton may be identified with the imaginary part  $Y = \text{Im } \Omega$  of the period matrix  $\Omega$  via the relation [85, 86],

$$Y = \frac{1}{\alpha'} \begin{pmatrix} L_1 + L_3 & -L_3 \\ -L_3 & L_2 + L_3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.1)$$

in the limit  $\alpha' \rightarrow 0$  holding the  $L_i$ ’s fixed. The location of the external legs along the two loops gives five additional parameters  $t_1, \dots, t_5$  lying in one of the intervals  $[0, L_a]$ , depending on the topology of the diagram. The topologies  $a', b', c'$  where two external legs form a tree before attaching to the skeleton are included by allowing two of these parameters to coincide.

## 7.2 Tropical limit of the Abelian differentials and prime form

Before analyzing the tropical limit of the string integrand, we review some basic results about the tropical limit of Abelian differentials and Green functions [32, 33, 72]. We choose a canonical homology basis of cycles  $\mathfrak{A}_I$  and  $\mathfrak{B}_I$  and conjugate normalized holomorphic



**Figure 5.** The left panel exhibits the two-loop 1PI skeleton graph  $\Gamma$  with a choice of homology basis and parametrization. The right panel exhibits the simply connected graph  $\Gamma' = \Gamma \setminus P$  obtained by removing one vertex  $P$  from  $\Gamma$ , and labeling  $P_a$  the endpoint of the edge  $e_a$ . On  $\Gamma'$  each pair of points  $t_i, t_j$  is connected by a unique path  $\gamma(t_i, t_j)$ . When  $t_i, t_j$  are on the same edge we have  $\partial_i L(t_i, t_j) = \text{sgn}(t_i - t_j) dt_i$ , while when  $t_i, t_j$  are on different edges we have  $\partial_i L(t_i, t_j) = -dt_i$ . For the purpose of illustration, we have displayed vertices corresponding to (a permutation of) graph (c) in figure 1, the other graphs being analogous.

Abelian differentials  $\omega_I$  on the Riemann surface  $\Sigma$  (see appendix B for a summary). First, let  $b_I$  be a homology basis on the skeleton graph  $\Gamma$  arising by degenerating the homology basis  $(\mathfrak{A}_I, \mathfrak{B}_I) \rightarrow (0, b_I)$  on  $\Sigma$  (see figure 5). In the tropical limit, the Abelian differentials scale as follows,

$$\omega_I(z_j) \rightarrow \frac{i \omega_I^{\text{tr}}(t_j)}{\alpha'} \quad (7.2)$$

where  $\omega_I^{\text{tr}}$  is equal to  $\pm dt_j$  on the edge  $e_a$  if  $e_a$  belongs to the cycle  $b_I$ , and 0 otherwise. The sign is fixed by the orientation of  $e_a$  with respect to the cycle  $b_I$ . For the choice of parametrization and homology basis for the skeleton graph in figure 5, we have,

$$\omega_1^{\text{tr}}(z_j) = \begin{cases} +dt_j & \text{on left edge} \\ -dt_j & \text{on middle edge,} \\ 0 & \text{on right edge} \end{cases} \quad \omega_2^{\text{tr}}(z_j) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{on left edge} \\ +dt_j & \text{on middle edge} \\ -dt_j & \text{on right edge} \end{cases} \quad (7.3)$$

The imaginary part of the period matrix  $Y_{IJ} \sim \int_{b_I} \omega_J^{\text{tr}} / \alpha'$  reproduces (7.1) above.

In order to discuss the tropical limit of the prime form, careful account must be taken of the fact that the prime form is a multi-valued form on  $\Sigma \times \Sigma$ . A single-valued representation may be obtained by considering the prime form on the simply connected domain obtained by fixing a base point  $P$  on  $\Sigma$  and then cutting  $\Sigma$  along four canonical homology basis cycles  $\mathfrak{A}_I, \mathfrak{B}_I$  chosen to pass through  $P$  (see e.g. figure 12 in [2]). In the tropical limit of a genus-two Riemann surface, the point  $P$  will lie at one of the vertices of the skeleton  $\Gamma$  such that the graph  $\Gamma' = \Gamma \setminus P$  becomes simply connected [76], as shown in the right panel of figure 5 where the vertex  $P$  has been replaced by endpoints  $P_a$  for the open edges  $e_a$ . Between any two points  $t_i, t_j \in \Gamma'$ , corresponding to the tropical limit of  $z_i, z_j$  on  $\Sigma$ , there

is now a single path  $\gamma(t_i, t_j)$  lying inside  $\Gamma'$ ,<sup>20</sup> such that the Abel-Jacobi map scales like,

$$(\zeta_i - \zeta_j)_I \rightarrow \frac{i}{\alpha'} \zeta_{i,j,I}^{\text{tr}} \quad \zeta_{i,j,I}^{\text{tr}} = - \int_{\gamma(t_i, t_j)} \omega_I^{\text{tr}} \quad (7.4)$$

in the tropical limit. As explained in [72], the logarithm of the prime form then scales as the length of the path,

$$\ln E(z_i, z_j | \Omega) \rightarrow \frac{\pi}{\alpha'} L(t_i, t_j) \quad (7.5)$$

To establish this<sup>21</sup> one shows that, for an adapted choice of the odd spin structure  $\nu = [\kappa', \kappa'']$ , the theta series in (B.14) and (B.15) are dominated by a single vector  $n$  in the sum (B.9), such that,

$$\ln E(z_i, z_j | \Omega) \rightarrow \frac{2\pi}{\alpha'} |\zeta_{i,j}^{\text{tr}} \cdot \kappa'| - \frac{1}{2} \ln |\omega^{\text{tr}}(t_i) \cdot \kappa'| - \frac{1}{2} \ln |\omega^{\text{tr}}(t_j) \cdot \kappa'| \quad (7.6)$$

Here, ‘‘adapted’’ means that the two arguments of the logarithms, coming from the tropical limit of the half-differentials, are non-zero. Whether a given spin structure is adapted or not strongly depend on the positions  $t_i, t_j$ : e.g for the two paths in the right panel of figure 5, we have (omitting a factor  $dt_i$  in the first three columns),

$\kappa'$	$\sigma_1, \sigma_2$	$\sigma_3$	$\sigma_4$	$2\zeta_{1,2}^{\text{tr}} \cdot \kappa'$	$2\zeta_{2,3}^{\text{tr}} \cdot \kappa'$	$2\zeta_{3,4}^{\text{tr}} \cdot \kappa'$
$(\frac{1}{2}, 0)$	1	0	-1	$t_1 - t_2$	$t_2 - L_1$	$L_2 - t_4$
$(0, \frac{1}{2})$	0	-1	1	0	$t_3 - L_3$	$t_3 + t_4 - L_2 - L_3$
$(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$	-1	1	0	$t_1 - t_2$	$t_2 + t_3 - L_1 - L_3$	$t_3 - L_3$

(7.7)

where we have used the following abbreviations for  $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$  in the table,

$$\sigma_i = 2\omega^{\text{tr}}(t_i) \cdot \kappa' \quad (7.8)$$

For the path  $\gamma(t_1, t_2)$ , the spin structures  $(\frac{1}{2}, 0)$  and  $(0, \frac{1}{2})$  are both adapted, and the first term in (7.6) is proportional to the length  $L(t_i, t_j)$ . For the path  $\gamma(t_2, t_3)$ , only the spin structure  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$  is adapted, and the same conclusion holds.

For other spin structures, deemed ‘‘not adapted’’, one of the combinations  $\omega^{\text{tr}}(t_i) \cdot \kappa'$  or  $\omega^{\text{tr}}(t_j) \cdot \kappa'$  or both in the arguments of the logarithms of (7.6) may vanish in taking the tropical limit naively. Instead, one must retain sub-leading corrections near the tropical limit. Since the prime form  $E(z_i, z_j | \Omega)$  is independent of the choice of odd spin structure  $\nu$ , these sub-leading corrections must conspire to reproduce the behavior (7.5).

It follows from (7.5) that the one-form  $\partial_i \ln E(z_i, z_j)$  reduces to  $\pm \pi dt_i / \alpha'$  in the tropical limit, where the sign depends whether the variation  $dt_i$  increases or decreases the length  $L(t_i, t_j)$ . With the conventions of figure 5, the sign is always negative if the two points are on different edges (e.g. for the path  $\gamma(t_3, t_4)$ ), while it depends on the sign of  $t_i - t_j$  if the two points are on the same edge (e.g. for the path  $\gamma(t_1, t_2)$ ).

<sup>20</sup>The path  $\gamma(t_i, t_j)$  is not to be confused with the functions  $\gamma(z | \Omega)$  which relate the string to the Arakelov Green functions in (2.12).

<sup>21</sup>We are grateful to Piotr Tourkine for helpful discussions on this matter.

As a first application, the tropical limit of the homology-invariant one-form (4.23) is given by,

$$\mathcal{P}^m(z_i) \longrightarrow \frac{2\pi}{\alpha'} \left( -\ell^m + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \in J} \text{sgn}(t_i - t_j) k_j^m - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \notin J} k_j^m \right) dt_i \quad (7.9)$$

where  $J$  is the set of external legs on the same edge as  $i$  (we include  $i$  in the set  $J$ , but set  $\text{sgn}(0) = 0$ ), and  $\ell^m$  is the loop momentum flowing through the point  $i$  on the skeleton diagram (in absence of other external vertices). By momentum conservation, this can be rewritten as,

$$\frac{2\pi}{\alpha'} \left( -\ell^m + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \in J} (1 + \text{sgn}(t_i - t_j)) k_j^m \right) dt_i \quad (7.10)$$

which is recognized as the average of the momenta flowing into and out of the vertex point  $t_i$  along the graph  $\Gamma'$ .

As a second application, we consider the tropical limit of the function  $g_{i,j}^I$  defined in (5.3),

$$g_{i,j}^I = \frac{\partial}{\partial \zeta_I} \ln \vartheta[\nu](\zeta|\Omega) \Big|_{\zeta=\zeta_i-\zeta_j} \quad (\zeta_i - \zeta_j)_I = \int_{z_j}^{z_i} \omega_I \quad (7.11)$$

Unlike the derivative of the prime form it has the antisymmetry property  $g_{j,i}^I = -g_{i,j}^I$ . For a choice of odd spin structure  $\nu = [\kappa', \kappa'']$  such that  $\zeta_{i,j}^{\text{tr}} \cdot \kappa' \neq 0$ , the tropical limit of the theta series  $\ln \vartheta[\nu](\zeta|\Omega)$  is given by the first term in (7.6), whose derivative with respect to  $\zeta_{i,j}^I$  gives,

$$g_{i,j}^I \rightarrow -2i\pi \text{sgn}(\zeta_{i,j}^{\text{tr}} \cdot \kappa') \kappa'_I \quad (7.12)$$

One may check that this result is consistent with the relation (5.2) in the tropical limit. For the specific choice of spin structure  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$  and any pair of points in the right panel of figure 5, we conclude that the tropical limit of  $g_{i,j}^I$  is independent on  $I$  and given by,

$$g_{i,j}^I \rightarrow \begin{cases} +i\pi & : t_i, t_j \text{ on distinct edges } (L_1, L_2), (L_1, L_3) \text{ or } (L_3, L_2) \\ -i\pi & : t_i, t_j \text{ on distinct edges } (L_2, L_1), (L_3, L_1) \text{ or } (L_2, L_3) \\ i\pi \text{sgn}(t_j - t_i) & : t_i, t_j \text{ both on edge } L_1 \\ i\pi \text{sgn}(t_i - t_j) & : t_i, t_j \text{ both on edge } L_2 \end{cases} \quad (7.13)$$

This conclusion would not hold for pairs of points on the middle edge of figure 5, as the contraction  $\zeta_{i,j}^{\text{tr}} \cdot \kappa'$  would vanish in that case. The fact that (7.13) is independent on  $I$  makes the spin structure  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$  particularly convenient, although one could in principle use any other odd spin structure.

### 7.3 Tropical limit of the chiral integrand: pentaboxes

We shall now analyze the behavior of the chiral integrand in the regime where the Abel-Jacobi map between the vertex points scales to infinity at the same rate  $\zeta_i - \zeta_j \sim i\zeta_{i,j}^{\text{tr}}/\alpha'$  as the period matrix  $\Omega \sim Y/\alpha'$ . This degeneration will turn out to reproduce precisely the pentabox diagrams  $(a, b, c)$  which occur both in supergravity and SYM theory. Contact

terms responsible for the double-box diagrams  $(a', b', c')$  require a discussion of the full integrand, which is deferred to the next subsection.

Recall that the chiral integrand is given by (5.10), which we copy for convenience after cyclically permuting the legs,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)} = \omega_I(2)\Delta(3,4)\Delta(5,1)\mathcal{K}_{1,2,3|4,5}^I + \text{cycl}(1,2,3,4,5) \quad (7.14)$$

where  $\mathcal{K}_{1,2,3|4,5}^I$  is the sub-correlator (5.11), cyclically permuted,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{K}_{1,2,3|4,5}^I = & 2\pi p_m^I T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m - g_{2,3}^I T_{23,1|4,5} - g_{2,1}^I T_{21,3|4,5} - g_{3,1}^I T_{31,2|4,5} \\ & - g_{2,4}^I S_{2;4|5|1,3} - g_{3,4}^I S_{3;4|5|2,1} - g_{1,4}^I S_{1;4|5|2,3} \\ & - g_{2,5}^I S_{2;5|4|3,1} - g_{3,5}^I S_{3;5|4|2,1} - g_{1,5}^I S_{1;5|4|2,3} \end{aligned} \quad (7.15)$$

where we recall that  $\Delta(i,j)$  is the bi-holomorphic  $(1,0)$  form (3.31).

In the tropical limit,  $\Delta(i,j)$  vanishes by antisymmetry if the vertices  $t_i, t_j$  lie on the same edge of the skeleton diagram, and reduces to  $\pm dt_i dt_j$  otherwise with the sign determined by (7.3). This implies that the three edges of the graph can carry  $(3,2,0)$ ,  $(3,1,1)$  or  $(2,2,1)$  external legs and therefore rules out the first two graphs in figure 4 with bubble and triangle subdiagrams. The third and fourth graph of figure 4 in turn involve bubble and triangle subdiagrams within a 1PR skeleton and drop out from the field theory limit for a different reason: Graphs obtained from the 1PR vacuum graph in the right panel of figure 2 cannot contribute by unitarity as a consequence of the non-renormalization theorems for three-point functions of on-shell massless states at one loop [66] and two loops [16].

We shall assign the external legs such that, for the odd spin structure  $\kappa' = (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$ , the inner product  $\zeta_{i,j}^{\text{tr}} \cdot \kappa'$  in (7.6) is non-zero for all pairs of points, so that (7.13) applies. This is for convenience only, since the result cannot depend on the choice of  $\kappa'$  since the correlator (7.14) is expressible in terms of prime forms, see (5.35) or (5.41), which are independent of the spin structure. At the same time, the tropical limit of (7.14) is unaffected by the vanishing of certain  $\omega(t_j) \cdot \kappa'$  in (7.7) since they descend from the  $(\frac{1}{2}, 0)$ -forms  $h_\nu(z_j)$  that were shown to cancel from  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}$  in section 5.1.

Consider first the case where the external legs are distributed as in the planar pentabox  $(a)$  of figure 1. By (7.3), the Abelian differentials  $\omega_I(z_j)$  reduce to

$$(a) : \quad \begin{array}{c} t_3 \\ \bullet \\ \text{---} \\ \bullet \\ t_2 \\ \text{---} \\ \bullet \\ t_1 \\ \text{---} \\ \bullet \\ t_5 \\ \text{---} \\ \bullet \\ t_4 \end{array} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \begin{pmatrix} \omega_1(z_j) \\ \omega_2(z_j) \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{(a)} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \times \frac{i dt_j}{\alpha'} \quad (7.16)$$

Thus the only non-vanishing term in the sum over cyclic permutations in (7.14) is the first one proportional to  $\omega_I(2)\Delta(3,4)\Delta(5,1)$  with  $\omega_I(2) \rightarrow i\delta_{I,1}dt_2/\alpha'$ , namely

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)} \xrightarrow{(a)} -\frac{i}{(\alpha')^5} \mathcal{K}_{1,2,3|4,5}^1 dt_1 \dots dt_5 \xrightarrow{(a)} -\frac{2\pi}{(\alpha')^5} \mathcal{N}_{1,2,3|4,5}^{(a)}(\ell) dt_1 \dots dt_5 \quad (7.17)$$

with

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{N}_{1,2,3|4,5}^{(a)}(\ell) &= ip_m^1 T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m + \frac{1}{2} (T_{23,1|4,5} + T_{12,3|4,5} + T_{13,2|4,5}) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2} (S_{2;4|5|1,3} + S_{3;4|5|2,1} + S_{1;4|5|2,3} + S_{2;5|4|3,1} + S_{3;5|4|2,1} + S_{1;5|4|2,1}) \\ &= i \left( p_m^1 - \frac{1}{2} (k_1 + k_2 + k_3)_m \right) T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m + \frac{1}{2} (T_{23,1|4,5} + T_{12,3|4,5} + T_{13,2|4,5})\end{aligned}\quad (7.18)$$

One can identify  $p_m^1$  with the loop momentum  $\ell$  in figure 1 (a) which is in the lower end of the edge supporting the external particles 1, 2, 3. The combination  $(k_1 + k_2 + k_3)_m T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  is obtained from the six permutations of  $S_{2;4|5|1,3}$  via (4.53). Up to a global rescaling of internal and external momenta by a factor of  $i$  which was left implicit in [48], this is in precise agreement with the numerator for the diagram (a) computed in that reference.

Next, consider the case where the external legs are distributed as in the non-planar pentabox (b) of figure 1. By (7.3), the Abelian differentials  $\omega_I(z_j)$  now reduce to

$$(b) : \quad \begin{array}{c} t_3 \\ \bullet \\ t_2 \\ \bullet \\ t_1 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \bullet \\ t_5 \end{array} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \begin{pmatrix} \omega_1(z_j) \\ \omega_2(z_j) \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{(b)} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \times \frac{i dt_j}{\alpha'} \quad (7.19)$$

The only non-vanishing term in the sum over cyclic permutations in (7.14) is again the first one proportional to  $\omega_I(2)\Delta(3,4)\Delta(5,1)$  with  $\omega_I(2) \rightarrow i\delta_{I,1}dt_2/\alpha'$ , leading to the same integrand as in (7.18) up to an overall sign from the fourth column,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)} \xrightarrow{(b)} \frac{i}{(\alpha')^5} \mathcal{K}_{1,2,3|4,5}^1 dt_1 \dots dt_5 \xrightarrow{(b)} -\frac{2\pi}{(\alpha')^5} \mathcal{N}_{1,2,3|4,5}^{(b)}(\ell) dt_1 \dots dt_5 \quad (7.20)$$

with

$$\mathcal{N}_{1,2,3|4,5}^{(b)}(\ell) = -\mathcal{N}_{1,2,3|4,5}^{(a)}(\ell) \quad (7.21)$$

The tropical limit of  $\mathcal{K}_{1,2,3|4,5}^1$  is identical in the cases of (a) and (b) since  $g_{4,5}^I$  does not occur in (7.15). The non-planar pentabox numerator (7.21) is again in precise agreement with the numerator for the diagram (b) computed in [48].

Finally, let consider the case where the external legs are distributed as in the non-planar pentabox (c) of figure 1 (also see the right panel of figure 5). The Abelian differentials  $\omega_I(z_j)$  now reduce to,

$$(c) : \quad \begin{array}{c} t_2 \\ \bullet \\ t_1 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \bullet \\ t_5 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \bullet \\ t_4 \end{array} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \begin{pmatrix} \omega_1(z_j) \\ \omega_2(z_j) \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{(c)} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \times \frac{i dt_j}{\alpha'} \quad (7.22)$$

There are now two non-vanishing terms in the sum over cyclic permutations in (7.14), namely  $\omega_I(1)\Delta(2,3)\Delta(4,5)$  and  $\omega_I(4)\Delta(5,1)\Delta(2,3)$ ,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)} \xrightarrow{(c)} \frac{i}{(\alpha')^5} (\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^1 - \mathcal{K}_{3,4,5|1,2}^2) dt_1 \dots dt_5 \xrightarrow{(c)} \frac{2\pi}{(\alpha')^5} \mathcal{N}_{1,2|4,3|5}^{(c)}(\ell, r) dt_1 \dots dt_5 \quad (7.23)$$

with loop momenta  $p^1 = \ell$  as well as  $p^2 = -r$  in figure 1 (c) and

$$\mathcal{N}_{1,2|4,3|5}^{(c)}(\ell, r) = \mathcal{N}_{1,2,5|3,4}^{(a)}(p^1) + \mathcal{N}_{3,4,5|1,2}^{(a)}(-p^2) = \mathcal{N}_{1,2,5|3,4}^{(a)}(\ell) + \mathcal{N}_{3,4,5|1,2}^{(a)}(r) \quad (7.24)$$

again in precise agreement with the numerator for the diagram (c) computed in [48]. The degenerations  $\mathcal{K}_{5,1,2|3,4}^1 \rightarrow -2\pi i \mathcal{N}_{1,2,5|3,4}^{(a)}(\ell)$  and  $\mathcal{K}_{3,4,5|1,2}^2 \rightarrow 2\pi i \mathcal{N}_{3,4,5|1,2}^{(a)}(r)$  are obtained by repeating the steps of (7.18) which are now sensitive to all the five cases of  $g_{i,j}^I$  covered in (7.13). The change of orientation in  $p^2 = -r$  stems from the fact that the definition (2.15) of loop momenta via  $\mathfrak{A}_I$ -cycle integrals leads to both of  $p^1$  and  $p^2$  pointing to the left in figure 1 (c), whereas  $r$  is drawn to point to the right. Moreover, note the relative sign between the right-hand sides of (7.23) and (7.17), (7.20) in identifying the numerators: This sign reflects the orientation of leg 5 in figure 1 (c) whether its external edge points to the left or right and drops out from the gravity numerator  $\mathcal{N}_{1,2|4,3|5}^{(c)}(\ell, r) \tilde{\mathcal{N}}_{1,2|4,3|5}^{(c)}(\ell, r)$  that we are deriving from the tropical limit.

Note that the relations (7.21) and (7.24) among pentabox numerators are the kinematic Jacobi identities which are consequences of color-kinematics duality [67]. In our setup, the kinematic Jacobi identities among  $\mathcal{N}^{(a)}$ ,  $\mathcal{N}^{(b)}$ ,  $\mathcal{N}^{(c)}$  follow from the degenerations of the five-forms in the correlator (7.14) and the tropical limit (7.13) of  $g_{i,j}^I$ .

#### 7.4 Tropical limit of the Type II string integrand: double boxes

Scattering amplitudes in Type II strings involve an integral (6.2) of the product  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)} \tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)} |\mathcal{I}_{(5)}|^2$  over the loop momentum, vertex points  $z_i$  and complex structure moduli parametrized by  $\Omega$ . As we review in subsection 7.5 below, the tropical limit of the chiral integrand discussed in the previous subsection reproduces exactly the contribution of the pentabox diagrams (a, b, c) in figure 1. However, there are additional contributions from maximal degenerations of the genus-two Riemann surface where two punctures collide, which are responsible for the double-box diagrams (a', b', c'), as we now show.

Due to short-distance singularities in the chiral integrand arising from derivatives of the prime form,

$$\partial_{z_i} \ln E(z_i, z_j) = \frac{1}{z_i - z_j} + \mathcal{O}(z_i - z_j) \quad (7.25)$$

the integral of the product  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)} \tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)} |\mathcal{I}_{(5)}|^2$  over vertex points  $z_i$  is not finite in the low energy expansion, but rather has kinematical poles of the form

$$\int_{|z| < R} d^2 z |z|^{-2s-2} f(z) = -\pi \frac{f(0)}{s} + \mathcal{O}(s^0) \quad (7.26)$$

where we assume that the function  $f(z)$  is continuous at the origin. The  $\mathcal{O}(s^0)$  term depends on the radius  $R > 0$  used to excise the singularity at  $z = 0$ , but does not contribute to the field theory limit at leading order and can be ignored.

The coefficients of the kinematic poles can be computed by collecting the four possible sources of poles of the form  $1/|z_i - z_j|^2$ , and performing the replacement,

$$\left. \begin{aligned} & |\partial_{z_i} \ln E(z_i, z_j)|^2 \\ & - \partial_{z_i} \ln E(z_i, z_j) \overline{\partial_{z_j} \ln E(z_j, z_i)} \end{aligned} \right\} \sim \frac{1}{|z_i - z_j|^2} \rightarrow -\frac{\pi \delta^2(z_i, z_j)}{s_{ij}} \quad (7.27)$$

Note that products of prime forms with different arguments  $\partial_{z_i} \ln E(z_i, z_j) \overline{\partial_{z_i} \ln E(z_i, z_k)}$  with  $k \neq j$  do not lead to any kinematical pole since the resulting singularity  $(z_i - z_j)^{-1} (\bar{z}_i -$

$\bar{z}_k)^{-1}$  integrates to zero after integration over the phase of  $z_i - z_j$ . Moreover, maximal degenerations with three or more punctures colliding do not contribute to the field theory limit at five points since they would require more than one prime form in the chiral correlators such that the integration rule (7.26) can be used multiple times.

The singularities  $(z_1 - z_2)^{-1}$  of the chiral correlator were already extracted in (5.36) based on the representation (5.35). The residue at  $s_{12} = 0$  of the relevant chiral contributions is given by,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^{12} = \text{Res}_{z_1 \rightarrow z_2} \mathcal{K}_{(5)} = T_{12,3|4,5} \Delta(2,4) \Delta(3,5) + T_{12,4|3,5} \Delta(2,3) \Delta(4,5) \quad (7.28)$$

which is permutation symmetric in 3, 4, 5, by virtue of the symmetries (3.29) and (3.32). Hence, the graphs where the vertices 1 and 2 collide are captured by applying the replacement (7.27) to,

$$\mathcal{K}_{(5)} \tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)} \rightarrow \frac{\mathcal{K}_{(5)}^{12} \tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)}^{12}}{|z_1 - z_2|^2} \rightarrow -\frac{\pi \delta^2(z_1, z_2)}{s_{12}} \mathcal{K}_{(5)}^{12} \tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{(5)}^{12} \quad (7.29)$$

We will now extract the chiral contributions to double-box numerators for diagrams  $(a')$ ,  $(b')$ ,  $(c')$  in figure 1. Given that the chiral contribution (7.28) shares the structure of the four-point correlator (3.33), the computations below closely follow the tropical limit of the two-loop four-point amplitude in [72].

In the planar case  $(a')$ , the abelian differentials  $\omega_I(z_j)$  with  $j = 2, 3, 4, 5$  reduce to (see (7.3))

$$(a') : \quad \begin{array}{c} t_3 \\ \text{---} \\ t_1, t_2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{---} \\ \text{---} \\ t_4 \\ \text{---} \\ t_5 \end{array} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \begin{pmatrix} \omega_1(z_j) \\ \omega_2(z_j) \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{(a')} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \times \frac{i dt_j}{\alpha'} \quad (7.30)$$

and (7.28) reduces to the first term  $\Delta(2,4) \Delta(3,5) \rightarrow dt_2 \dots dt_5 / (\alpha')^4$ . The resulting numerator agrees with the result of [48] (denoted by  $\mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(d)}(\ell)$  in the reference)

$$(\alpha')^4 \mathcal{K}_{(5)}^{12} \xrightarrow{(a')} T_{12,3|4,5} dt_2 \dots dt_5 \xrightarrow{(a')} \mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(a')}(\ell) dt_2 \dots dt_5 \quad (7.31)$$

Moreover, this expression for planar double-box numerators matches antisymmetric combinations of planar pentabox numerators  $\mathcal{N}^{(a)}$  in (7.18)

$$\mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(a')}(\ell) = T_{12,3|4,5} = \mathcal{N}_{1,2,3|4,5}^{(a)}(\ell) - \mathcal{N}_{2,1,3|4,5}^{(a)}(\ell) \quad (7.32)$$

and therefore realizes another kinematic Jacobi identity required by the color-kinematics duality [67].

The above steps can be repeated to determine the non-planar double-box numerators for diagrams  $(b')$  and  $(c')$  in figure 1. The degeneration of the Abelian differentials,

$$(b') : \quad \begin{array}{c} t_3 \\ \text{---} \\ t_1, t_2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{---} \\ \text{---} \\ t_4 \\ \text{---} \\ t_5 \end{array} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \begin{pmatrix} \omega_1(z_j) \\ \omega_2(z_j) \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{(b')} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \times \frac{i dt_j}{\alpha'} \\ (c') : \quad \begin{array}{c} t_3 \\ \text{---} \\ t_1, t_2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{---} \\ t_3 \\ \text{---} \\ t_4 \\ \text{---} \\ t_5 \end{array} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \begin{pmatrix} \omega_1(z_j) \\ \omega_2(z_j) \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{(c')} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \times \frac{i dt_j}{\alpha'} \quad (7.33)$$

again suppresses the second term  $\sim \Delta(2, 3)\Delta(4, 5)$  in (7.28), and we obtain an extra minus sign in  $\Delta(2, 4)\Delta(3, 5) \rightarrow -dt_2 \dots dt_5/(\alpha')^4$  as compared to the planar case (7.30). Hence, the tropical limit of the correlator for diagrams  $(b')$ ,  $(c')$  is

$$(\alpha')^4 \mathcal{K}_{(5)}^{12} \xrightarrow{(b')} -T_{12,3|4,5} dt_2 \dots dt_5, \quad (\alpha')^4 \mathcal{K}_{(5)}^{12} \xrightarrow{(c')} -T_{12,3|4,5} dt_2 \dots dt_5 \quad (7.34)$$

and one can read off the non-planar double-box numerators

$$\mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(b')}(\ell) = \mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(c')}(\ell) = -T_{12,3|4,5} = -\mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(a')}(\ell) \quad (7.35)$$

They reproduce the numerators of [48] (denoted by  $\mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(e)}(\ell)$ ,  $\mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(f)}(\ell)$  in the reference) and obey the color-kinematics duality when comparing with non-planar pentabox numerators. Also note that the symmetry of  $\mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(a')}(\ell)$ ,  $\mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(b')}(\ell)$ ,  $\mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(c')}(\ell)$  under  $4 \leftrightarrow 5$  is consistent with the vanishing of numerators associated with triangle-subgraphs.

## 7.5 Assembling the supergravity amplitude

Collecting the results in the previous two subsections, we find that the field theory limit of the genus-two scattering amplitude in Type II strings precisely produces the complete two-loop five-point amplitude in maximal supergravity in  $D$  dimensions, in the double-copy representation of [48] (with the structure of [67]),

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{A}_5^{\text{SG}} = \delta \left( \sum_{j=1}^5 k_j \right) \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2D}} \left\langle \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{N}_{1,2,3|4,5}^{(a)}(\ell) \tilde{\mathcal{N}}_{1,2,3|4,5}^{(a)}(\ell) I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(a)} + \frac{1}{4} \mathcal{N}_{1,2,3|4,5}^{(b)}(\ell) \tilde{\mathcal{N}}_{1,2,3|4,5}^{(b)}(\ell) I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(b)} \right. \right. \\ \left. \left. + \frac{1}{4} \mathcal{N}_{1,2|4,3|5}^{(c)}(\ell, r) \tilde{\mathcal{N}}_{1,2|4,3|5}^{(c)}(\ell, r) I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(c)} + \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(a')} \tilde{\mathcal{N}}_{12,3|4,5}^{(a')} I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(a')} \right. \right. \\ \left. \left. + \frac{1}{4} \mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(b')} \tilde{\mathcal{N}}_{12,3|4,5}^{(b')} I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(b')} + \frac{1}{4} \mathcal{N}_{12,3|4,5}^{(c')} \tilde{\mathcal{N}}_{12,3|4,5}^{(c')} I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(c')} + \text{sym}(1, 2, 3, 4, 5) \right\rangle_0 d\ell dr \right. \right. \quad (7.36) \end{aligned}$$

Here, the symmetry factors  $\frac{1}{2}$  and  $\frac{1}{4}$  ensure that the sum over  $5!$  permutations of the external legs does not overcount individual diagrams. The factors  $I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(x)}$  are the usual products of Feynman propagators for the diagrams in figure 1,

$$\begin{aligned} I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(a)} &\equiv \frac{1}{\ell^2 r^2 (\ell+r)^2 (\ell-k_1)^2 (\ell-k_{12})^2 (\ell-k_{123})^2 (r-k_5)^2 (r-k_{45})^2} \\ I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(b)} &\equiv \frac{1}{\ell^2 r^2 (\ell+r)^2 (\ell-k_1)^2 (\ell-k_{12})^2 (\ell-k_{123})^2 (r-k_5)^2 (\ell+r+k_4)^2} \\ I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(c)} &\equiv \frac{1}{\ell^2 r^2 (\ell+r)^2 (\ell-k_1)^2 (\ell-k_{12})^2 (r-k_3)^2 (r-k_{34})^2 (\ell+r+k_5)^2} \\ I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(a')} &\equiv \frac{1}{k_{12}^2 \ell^2 r^2 (\ell+r)^2 (\ell-k_{12})^2 (\ell-k_{123})^2 (r-k_5)^2 (r-k_{45})^2} \\ I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(b')} &\equiv \frac{1}{k_{12}^2 \ell^2 r^2 (\ell+r)^2 (\ell-k_{12})^2 (\ell-k_{123})^2 (r-k_5)^2 (r+\ell+k_4)^2} \\ I_{1,2,3,4,5}^{(c')} &\equiv \frac{1}{k_{12}^2 \ell^2 r^2 (\ell+r)^2 (\ell-k_{12})^2 (\ell+r+k_3)^2 (r-k_5)^2 (r-k_{45})^2} \quad (7.37) \end{aligned}$$

The zero-mode integral  $\langle \dots \rangle_0$  in (3.5) yields the components of the superspace numerators for arbitrary external states of the ten-dimensional Type-II multiplets, see [56] for the bosonic components of  $T_{1,2,3|4,5}^m$  and  $T_{12,3|4,5}$ .

The supergravity amplitude (7.36) has been given for general spacetime dimension  $D$  by considering a compactification on a  $T^{10-D}$ -torus and retaining only the zero-momentum and -winding modes in the Siegel-Narain theta series (6.15). The superspace components of the kinematic factors in (7.36) can be dimensionally reduced to any  $D \leq 10$  and integrated over the loop momenta in  $D < 7$ , where the integrals are UV-finite. Dimensional reduction to  $D = 4$  does not directly reproduce the BCJ numerators of [67] in spinor-helicity variables since their building blocks  $\gamma_{ij}$  involve certain inverse Levi-Civita invariants that are specific to four dimensions. Still, the symmetry properties of the combinations of  $\gamma_{ij}$  in [67] match those of the superspace building blocks in (7.36), see appendix D of [48] for details. The difference between the amplitude representation in [67] and the dimensionally reduced superspace numerators of (7.36) should cancel when integrating the sum over all diagrams, for instance using the recent progress on the relevant integrals in [87–90].

## 7.6 Comments on the Heterotic and Type I strings

Having correctly reproduced the two-loop integrand in maximal supergravity, one would like to also match the two-loop integrand in  $\mathcal{N} = 4$  super-Yang-Mills theory, which is closely related to the supergravity amplitude by the double-copy prescription [67]. One possible strategy is to extract the field theory limit of the scattering amplitude of five gauge bosons in the Heterotic strings, but this would produce the integrand for half-maximal supergravity, where both vector multiplets and the gravitational multiplet propagate in the loops. While the four-point two-loop amplitude in half-maximal supergravity is known [91], this is not the case to our knowledge for the five-point amplitude. Moreover, extracting the field theory limit of Heterotic string amplitudes is bound to be subtle, as contributions from the separating degeneration due to the pole of  $1/\Psi_{10}$  (where  $\Psi_{10}$  is the genus-two Igusa cusp form of weight 10) are known to contribute at four points [65], and are expected for five points as well.

A more direct approach is to consider the oriented, open-string sector of Type I superstrings, which precisely reduces to SYM theory at low energy, without contamination from gravitational exchange. For open superstrings, scattering amplitudes of massless gauge bosons are given by an integral over the moduli space of Riemann surfaces with boundaries, over the positions  $z_i$  of the vertex operators along the boundaries [92], and over loop momenta. Riemann surfaces with boundaries are constructed as a quotient of a closed Riemann surface under an anti-holomorphic involution [93]. As a result, the period matrix is purely imaginary, and can be parametrized by (7.1) for a genus-two Riemann surface with three boundaries. The integrand is given by the product  $\mathcal{K}_{(5)}\mathcal{I}_{(5)}\mathcal{C}_{(5)}$  where  $\mathcal{C}_{(5)}$  is the Chan-Paton factor, which depends only on the color indices of the external particles. For a five-point amplitude with gauge group  $SU(N_c)$ , possible choices of  $\mathcal{C}_{(5)}$  include a single-trace  $N_c^2 \text{Tr}(T^{a_1}T^{a_2}T^{a_3}T^{a_4}T^{a_5})$  if all 5 external particles are attached to the same boundary and a double-trace  $N_c \text{Tr}(T^{a_1}T^{a_2}T^{a_3})\text{Tr}(T^{a_4}T^{a_5})$  if three particles are attached on one boundary and two on another (recall that  $\text{Tr}(T^a) = 0$  for a simple gauge group; the

overall factors of  $N_c^2$  and  $N_c$  arise from  $\text{Tr}(1)$  on the boundaries which do not support any external particle).

At low energies, scattering amplitudes are again dominated by degenerate Riemann surfaces, with long tubes replaced by strips and closed-string vertices replaced by disks.<sup>22</sup> At two-loop, five points, they can be represented by fattened versions of the graphs in figure 1, where the fattening keeps track of the position of the vertex operators. For the pentabox diagrams  $(a, b, c)$ , the same computations as in subsection 7.3 apply, and reproduce the field theory integrands in color-kinematics dual form. Double-box diagrams, however, arise in a different fashion than for closed strings, since the rules (7.26), (7.27) for contact diagrams no longer apply. Instead, kinematic poles only arise from prime forms involving pairs of neighbouring punctures on the same boundary,

$$\partial_{z_i} \ln E(z_i, z_{i\pm 1}) \sim \frac{1}{z_i - z_{i\pm 1}} \rightarrow \mp \frac{\delta(z_i, z_{i\pm 1})}{s_{i(i\pm 1)}} \quad (7.38)$$

Therefore, the coefficient of a single-trace Chan-Paton factor  $\sim N_c^2 \text{tr}(T^{a_1} T^{a_2} T^{a_3} T^{a_4} T^{a_5})$  exhibits kinematical poles of the form  $1/s_{12}, 1/s_{23}, 1/s_{34}, 1/s_{45}, 1/s_{51}$ , while a double-trace Chan-Paton factor  $\sim N_c \text{tr}(T^{a_1} T^{a_2} T^{a_3}) \text{tr}(T^{a_4} T^{a_5})$  is accompanied by poles of the form  $1/s_{12}, 1/s_{23}, 1/s_{31}$ . The numerators can be extracted in the same way as before, and turn out to match with the prescription of [67], after converting color-ordered traces into the color factors associated to the cubic graphs in figure 1. All cubic graphs are accessible from the partial amplitudes  $\sim N_c^2 \text{tr}(T^{a_1} T^{a_2} T^{a_3} T^{a_4} T^{a_5})$  and  $\sim N_c \text{tr}(T^{a_1} T^{a_2} T^{a_3}) \text{tr}(T^{a_4} T^{a_5})$  since the  $N_c^{-2}$ -suppressed single-trace contribution  $\sim \text{Tr}(T^{a_1} T^{a_2} T^{a_3} T^{a_4} T^{a_5})$  is expressible in terms of permutations of the former [96] (see [97] for the  $N_c^{-2}$ -suppressed four-point single-trace amplitude).

## 8 Conclusion and future directions

In this work, we have proposed a spacetime supersymmetric expression for the chiral two-loop five-point amplitude relevant to massless states of Type II, Heterotic, and Type I superstring theories. The construction of the chiral amplitude is driven by the BRST cohomology of vertex operators in the pure spinor formalism and the constraints from homology invariance in the chiral splitting procedure. The main result in (5.10) and (5.11) is written in pure spinor superspace and therefore allows to address arbitrary combinations of massless external states in the gauge and gravity supermultiplets.

The key result of this work is to obtain the full  $\alpha'$  dependence of the two-loop five-point amplitudes, including the contributions to the correlators beyond the OPE analysis and the low energy limit of Type I and Type II amplitudes in [25]. In doing so we provide the starting point for a systematic study of the low energy expansion of Type II string amplitudes beyond leading order, and comparison with predictions from string dualities,

---

<sup>22</sup>The field theory limit of the genus-two open-superstring partition function in a magnetic field was investigated in [81, 94, 95] using the Schottky representation, reproducing the Feynman diagrams contributing to the Euler-Heisenberg Lagrangian of pure Yang-Mills theory. Our interest is in scattering amplitudes in SYM theory in Minkowski background.

which will be the subject of a companion paper [30]. Our result will be further validated by a derivation from first principles in the RNS formalism of the chiral amplitude for external NS bosons and even spin structure to be given in another companion paper [31].

We have also extracted the loop integrands for two-loop five-point amplitudes of super-Yang-Mills and maximal supergravity in  $D \leq 10$  dimensions: The worldline limit of the string amplitudes in this work reproduce the representation of the field theory amplitudes proposed in [48]. This form of the super-Yang-Mills and supergravity amplitudes features the color-kinematics duality and double-copy structure [68–70]. Therefore, our work is yet another showcase that hidden relations between gauge and gravity amplitudes may be conveniently studied from a string-theory perspective.

Our methods should be useful to determine and organize chiral two-loop amplitudes for higher numbers of massless states. The explicit construction of the kinematic factors will require further cohomology studies in pure spinor superspace as for instance done at genus one [52, 59]. The decomposition (5.10) of the chiral amplitude into a basis of differential forms is easily extended to higher multiplicity: At six points for instance, the problem reduces to constructing 14 sub-correlators along with the basis forms that are individually homology-invariant functions of the punctures related by permutations of the external legs.

Given that the chiral correlators in (5.11) have no explicit  $\alpha'$  dependence, our results may also be exported to the pure spinor incarnation of the ambi-twistor string [98, 99], and should pave the way towards obtaining five-point supergravity amplitudes from correlators on the bi-nodal sphere using the techniques of [100, 101].

## A Clifford-Dirac algebra and pure spinor identities

Weyl spinors in the **16** and **16'** representations of the Lorentz group  $\text{SO}(10)$  in ten-dimensional space-time  $\mathbb{R}^{10}$  will be denoted with an upper and a lower index, respectively, such as  $\xi^\alpha$  and  $\chi_\alpha$  where  $\alpha = 1, \dots, 16$ . The Clifford-Dirac matrices  $(\gamma^m)_{\alpha\beta}$  and  $(\gamma^m)^{\alpha\beta}$  acting on Weyl spinors in the **16** and **16'** respectively satisfy the Clifford algebra,

$$(\gamma^m)_{\alpha\beta} (\gamma^n)^{\beta\gamma} + (\gamma^n)_{\alpha\beta} (\gamma^m)^{\beta\gamma} = 2\eta^{mn}\delta_\alpha^\gamma \quad (\text{A.1})$$

where  $\eta^{mn}$  is the flat Minkowski metric on  $\mathbb{R}^{10}$  and  $m, n = 1, \dots, 10$ . The summation convention over pairs of repeated upper and lower vectorial or spinorial indices is adopted throughout. We shall often be led to complexifying the momenta and polarization data of the fields, in which case space-time is  $\mathbb{C}^{10}$ , the Lorentz group is  $\text{SO}(10; \mathbb{C})$ , and the metric  $\eta^{mn}$  is the Kronecker  $\delta^{mn}$ , and all formulas in this section continue to hold as stated.

### A.1 Basic identities

The anti-symmetric tensor  $\gamma$ -matrices are defined by,

$$\begin{aligned} (\gamma^{mn})_{\alpha}{}^{\beta} &= \frac{1}{2!} (\gamma^m)_{\alpha\gamma} (\gamma^n)^{\gamma\beta} - \text{1 permutation of } m, n \\ (\gamma^{mnp})_{\alpha\beta} &= \frac{1}{3!} (\gamma^m)_{\alpha\gamma} (\gamma^n)^{\gamma\delta} (\gamma^p)_{\delta\beta} \pm \text{5 permutation of } m, n, p \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.2})$$

and so on for  $\gamma^{mnpq}$ ,  $\gamma^{mnpqr}$ , and similarly for the  $\gamma$ -matrices with reversed spinor indices such as  $(\gamma^{mn})^{\alpha\beta}$ . We shall not need  $\gamma$ -matrices of rank 6 or higher which are related to  $\gamma$ -matrices of lower rank by Poincaré duality. The  $\gamma$ -matrices have the following symmetry properties,

$$\begin{aligned} (\gamma^m)_{\alpha\beta} &= +(\gamma^m)_{\beta\alpha} & (\gamma^{mn})^{\alpha\beta} &= -(\gamma^{mn})_{\beta}{}^{\alpha} \\ (\gamma^{mnp})_{\alpha\beta} &= -(\gamma^{mnp})_{\beta\alpha} & (\gamma^{mnpq})^{\alpha\beta} &= +(\gamma^{mnpq})_{\beta}{}^{\alpha} \\ (\gamma^{mnpqr})_{\alpha\beta} &= +(\gamma^{mnpqr})_{\beta\alpha} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.3})$$

satisfy the following product identities,

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_{mn}\gamma_s &= \gamma_{mns} + \gamma_m\eta_{ns} - \gamma_n\eta_{ms} \\ \gamma_{mnp}\gamma_s &= \gamma_{mnps} + \gamma_{mn}\eta_{ps} - \gamma_{mp}\eta_{ns} + \gamma_{np}\eta_{ms} \\ \gamma_{mnpq}\gamma_s &= \gamma_{mnpqs} + \gamma_{mnp}\eta_{qs} - \gamma_{mnq}\eta_{ps} + \gamma_{mpq}\eta_{ns} - \gamma_{npq}\eta_{ms} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.4})$$

as well as the following contraction identities,

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma^m\gamma_{m n_1 \dots n_p} &= (10-p)\gamma_{n_1 \dots n_p} \\ \gamma^m\gamma_{n_1 \dots n_p}\gamma_m &= (10-2p)(-)^p\gamma_{n_1 \dots n_p} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.5})$$

As an immediate consequence for arbitrary commuting or anti-commuting spinors  $\xi^\alpha, \psi^\alpha$ , we have the following decomposition formulas,

$$\begin{aligned} \xi^\alpha\psi^\beta + \xi^\beta\psi^\alpha &= \frac{1}{8}(\xi\gamma_m\psi)(\gamma^m)^{\alpha\beta} + \frac{1}{16 \cdot 5!}(\xi\gamma_{mnpqr}\psi)(\gamma^{mnpqr})^{\alpha\beta} \\ \xi^\alpha\psi^\beta - \xi^\beta\psi^\alpha &= \frac{1}{8 \cdot 3!}(\xi\gamma_{mnp}\psi)(\gamma^{mnp})^{\alpha\beta} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.6})$$

For an arbitrary commuting Weyl spinor  $\xi$ , combining the first equation of (A.6) with the second equation of (A.5) we obtain,

$$(\gamma^m\xi)_\alpha(\gamma_m\xi)_\beta = -\frac{1}{2}(\gamma_m)_{\alpha\beta}(\xi\gamma^m\xi) \quad (\text{A.7})$$

Finally, we have the following Fierz identity,

$$8\delta_\beta{}^\gamma\delta_\alpha{}^\delta = 4(\gamma^m)_{\alpha\beta}(\gamma_m)^{\gamma\delta} - (\gamma^{mn})_{\alpha}{}^{\gamma}(\gamma_{mn})_{\beta}{}^{\delta} - 2\delta_\alpha{}^\gamma\delta_\beta{}^\delta \quad (\text{A.8})$$

and the famous supersymmetry Fierz identity,

$$0 = (\gamma^m)_{\alpha\beta}(\gamma_m)_{\gamma\delta} + (\gamma^m)_{\beta\gamma}(\gamma_m)_{\alpha\delta} + (\gamma^m)_{\gamma\alpha}(\gamma_m)_{\beta\delta} \quad (\text{A.9})$$

## A.2 Identities involving pure spinors

A commuting pure Weyl spinor  $\lambda$  is defined to satisfy (2.1), namely  $(\lambda\gamma^m\lambda) = 0$ . Combining (2.1) with (A.7) and with the last equation of (A.4) respectively, we see that an arbitrary commuting pure spinor satisfies the following fundamental identities,

$$\begin{aligned} (\lambda\gamma^m)_\alpha(\lambda\gamma_m)_\beta &= 0 \\ (\lambda\gamma_{mnpqr}\lambda)(\lambda\gamma^m)_\alpha &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.10})$$

The tensor product of two identical pure Weyl spinors has the following decomposition,

$$\lambda^\alpha \lambda^\beta = \frac{1}{32 \cdot 5!} (\lambda \gamma_{mnpqr} \lambda) (\gamma^{mnpqr})^{\alpha\beta} \quad (\text{A.11})$$

The following identity holds for the tensor product of three identical pure Weyl spinors,

$$(\lambda \gamma_{[mnpqr} \lambda) (\lambda \gamma_{s]} \lambda)_\alpha = 0 \quad (\text{A.12})$$

where the anti-symmetrization bracket is applied to all six indices. The identity may be proven as follows. The symmetric tensor product of three arbitrary Weyl spinors in the **16** is reducible by contracting two of the Weyl spinors with a  $\gamma$ -matrix. However, this contraction vanishes for pure spinors by (2.1) and hence the symmetrized tensor product of three pure Weyl spinors is irreducible. Its further tensor product with a **16** is readily shown not to contain an anti-symmetric rank 6 tensor, which is Poincaré dual to an anti-symmetric rank 4 tensor, which proves the identity.

## B Functions and differentials on Riemann surfaces

In this appendix, we review the basic holomorphic and meromorphic functions, differentials, and Green functions on a compact Riemann surface  $\Sigma$  of genus  $h$  from which all string correlators needed here can be constructed. Standard references are [2, 35, 102].

### B.1 Homology and modular transformations

A canonical basis for the homology group  $H_1(\Sigma, \mathbb{Z})$  consists of 1-cycles  $\mathfrak{A}_I$  and  $\mathfrak{B}_I$  with  $I = 1, \dots, h$  and canonical intersection pairing  $\mathfrak{J}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{J}(\mathfrak{A}_I, \mathfrak{A}_J) &= \mathfrak{J}(\mathfrak{B}_I, \mathfrak{B}_J) = 0 \\ \mathfrak{J}(\mathfrak{A}_I, \mathfrak{B}_J) &= -\mathfrak{J}(\mathfrak{B}_I, \mathfrak{A}_J) = \delta_{IJ} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.1})$$

Different canonical bases  $(\mathfrak{A}_I, \mathfrak{B}_I)$  and  $(\tilde{\mathfrak{A}}_I, \tilde{\mathfrak{B}}_I)$  are related by linear transformations represented by a matrix  $M$  with integer entries,

$$\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{\mathfrak{B}} \\ \tilde{\mathfrak{A}} \end{pmatrix} = M \begin{pmatrix} \mathfrak{B} \\ \mathfrak{A} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.2})$$

Here,  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{B}$  stand for the column matrices with entries  $\mathfrak{A}_I$  and  $\mathfrak{B}_I$ , respectively, and  $M$  is an element of the group  $\text{Sp}(2h, \mathbb{Z})$  of modular transformations, which preserve the canonical intersection matrix  $\mathfrak{J}$ ,

$$M^t \mathfrak{J} M = \mathfrak{J} \quad \mathfrak{J} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -I_h \\ I_h & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad M = \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.3})$$

where  $A, B, C, D$  are  $h \times h$  matrices with integer entries. An important subgroup of  $\text{Sp}(2h, \mathbb{Z})$  is the group  $\text{Gl}(h, \mathbb{Z})$  which consists of those modular transformations  $M$  which transform  $\mathfrak{A}$ -cycles into linear combinations of  $\mathfrak{A}$ -cycles and  $\mathfrak{B}$ -cycles into linear combinations of  $\mathfrak{B}$ -cycles. It is obtained by setting  $B = C = 0$  and  $D = (A^t)^{-1}$ .

## B.2 Holomorphic 1-forms and the period matrix

A canonical basis of the cohomology group  $H^{(1,0)}(\Sigma, \mathbb{Z})$  consists of holomorphic  $(1,0)$ -forms  $\omega_I$  with  $I = 1, \dots, h$  whose periods on the homology basis  $(\mathfrak{A}_I, \mathfrak{B}_I)$  are given by,<sup>23</sup>

$$\oint_{\mathfrak{A}_I} \omega_J = \delta_{IJ} \quad \oint_{\mathfrak{B}_I} \omega_J = \Omega_{IJ} \quad (\text{B.4})$$

The  $\mathfrak{A}$ -periods fix the canonical normalization of  $\omega_I$ , while the  $\mathfrak{B}$ -periods give the period matrix  $\Omega$ , which is symmetric by the Riemann bilinear relations, and for which the matrix,

$$Y = \text{Im } \Omega \quad (\text{B.5})$$

is positive definite. Under modular transformations  $M \in \text{Sp}(2h, \mathbb{Z})$ , whose parametrization in terms of  $h \times h$  matrices  $A, B, C, D$  is given in (B.3), the matrix of holomorphic Abelian differentials  $\omega$ , the period matrix  $\Omega$ , its imaginary part  $Y$ , and the determinant thereof  $\det Y$  transform as follows,

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\omega} &= \omega(C\Omega + D)^{-1} \\ \tilde{\Omega} &= (A\Omega + B)(C\Omega + D)^{-1} \\ \tilde{Y} &= (\Omega C^t + D^t)^{-1} Y (C\Omega^* + D) \\ \det \tilde{Y} &= |\det(C\Omega + D)|^2 \det Y \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.6})$$

## B.3 The Abel map and Jacobi $\vartheta$ -functions

The Jacobian of the surface  $\Sigma$  is the Abelian variety defined by,

$$J(\Sigma) = \mathbb{C}^h / \{\mathbb{Z}^h + \Omega \mathbb{Z}^h\} \quad (\text{B.7})$$

Given a base point  $z_0 \in \Sigma$ , the Abel map sends a divisor  $D$  of  $n$  points  $z_i \in \Sigma$  with weights  $q_i \in \mathbb{Z}$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ , formally denoted by  $D = q_1 z_1 + \dots + q_n z_n$ , into  $\mathbb{C}^h$  by,

$$q_1 z_1 + \dots + q_n z_n \equiv \sum_{i=1}^n q_i \int_{z_0}^{z_i} (\omega_1, \dots, \omega_h) \quad (\text{B.8})$$

where the  $h$ -tuple  $(\omega_1, \dots, \omega_h)$  stands for the vector of holomorphic  $(1,0)$ -forms  $\omega_I$ . The Abel map into  $\mathbb{C}^h$  is multiple valued, but it is single valued as a map into  $J(\Sigma)$ .

The Jacobi  $\vartheta$ -functions with characteristics  $\kappa$  are defined on  $\zeta = (\zeta_1, \dots, \zeta_h)^t \in \mathbb{C}^h$  by,

$$\vartheta[\kappa](\zeta|\Omega) \equiv \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^h} \exp \left( i\pi(n + \kappa')^t \Omega (n + \kappa') + 2\pi i(n + \kappa')^t (\zeta + \kappa'') \right) \quad (\text{B.9})$$

Here,  $\kappa = (\kappa' | \kappa'')$  is a general characteristic, where  $\kappa', \kappa'' \in \mathbb{C}^h$  are both written as a column vector. Henceforth, we shall assume that  $\kappa$  corresponds to a spin structure, and thus be valued in  $\kappa', \kappa'' \in (\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z})^h$ . The parity of the spin structure is determined by the parity of the  $\vartheta$ -functions which satisfy,

$$\vartheta[\kappa](-\zeta|\Omega) = (-1)^{4\kappa' \cdot \kappa''} \vartheta[\kappa](\zeta|\Omega) \quad (\text{B.10})$$

---

<sup>23</sup>For our conventions and notations for integrals of  $(1,0)$  forms see footnote 2.

According to whether  $4\kappa' \cdot \kappa''$  is even or odd,  $\kappa$  is referred to as an *even or odd spin structure*. Upon shifting by full periods  $M, N \in \mathbb{Z}^h$ ,

$$\vartheta[\kappa](\zeta + M + \Omega N | \Omega) = \exp \left( -i\pi N^t \Omega N - 2\pi i N^t (\zeta + \kappa') + 2\pi i M^t \kappa'' \right) \vartheta[\kappa](\zeta | \Omega) \quad (\text{B.11})$$

Under a modular transformation  $M \in \text{Sp}(2h, \mathbb{Z})$  as given in (B.3), the characteristic  $\kappa = (\kappa' | \kappa'')$  transforms as (see for example [102, 103])

$$\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{\kappa}' \\ \tilde{\kappa}'' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} D & -C \\ -B & A \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \kappa' \\ \kappa'' \end{pmatrix} + \frac{1}{2} \text{diag} \begin{pmatrix} C D^t \\ A B^t \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.12})$$

The  $\vartheta$ -function transforms as follows,

$$\vartheta[\tilde{\kappa}] \left( (\Omega C^t + D^t)^{-1} \zeta | (A\Omega + B)(C\Omega + D)^{-1} \right) = \epsilon(\kappa, M) \left( \det(C\Omega + D) \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \vartheta[\kappa](\zeta | \Omega) \quad (\text{B.13})$$

where  $\epsilon(\kappa, M)$  is an eighth root of unity satisfying  $\epsilon^8 = 1$ . Its explicit form is given in [102, 103] but will not be needed here.

#### B.4 The prime form

The prime form is constructed as follows [102]. For any odd spin structure  $\nu$ , the  $2h - 2$  zeros of the holomorphic  $(1, 0)$ -form,

$$h_\nu^2(z) = \sum_I \partial^I \vartheta[\nu](0 | \Omega) \omega_I(z) \quad \partial^I = \frac{\partial}{\partial \zeta_I} \quad (\text{B.14})$$

are double and the form admits a unique (up to an overall sign) square root  $h_\nu(z)$  which is a holomorphic  $(1/2, 0)$  form. The prime form is a  $(-1/2, 0)$  form in  $z, w$ , living in the covering space of  $\Sigma$ , defined by

$$E(z, w | \Omega) = \frac{\vartheta[\nu](z - w | \Omega)}{h_\nu(z) h_\nu(w)} \quad (\text{B.15})$$

where the argument  $z - w$  of the  $\vartheta$ -functions stands for the Abel map of (B.8) with  $z_1 = z$ ,  $z_2 = w$  and  $q_1 = -q_2 = 1$ . The form  $E(z, w | \Omega)$  defined in (B.15) is independent of  $\nu$ , holomorphic in  $z$  and  $w$ , odd under swapping  $z$  and  $w$ , and has a unique simple zero at  $z = w$ . It is single valued when  $z$  is moved around  $\mathfrak{A}_I$  cycles, but has non-trivial monodromy around a  $\mathfrak{B}_I$  cycle,

$$E(z + \mathfrak{B}_I, w | \Omega) = -\exp \left( -i\pi \Omega_{II} - 2\pi i \int_w^z \omega_I \right) E(z, w | \Omega) \quad (\text{B.16})$$

In terms of the first derivatives, we have,

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_z \ln E(z + \mathfrak{B}_I, w) &= \partial_z \ln E(z, w) - 2\pi i \omega_I(z) \\ \partial_z \ln E(z, w + \mathfrak{B}_I) &= \partial_z \ln E(z, w) + 2\pi i \omega_I(z) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.17})$$

The combination  $\partial_z \partial_w \ln E(z, w|\Omega)$  is a single valued meromorphic differential with one double pole at  $z = w$  and no single poles. Its integrals around homology cycles are given by,

$$\begin{aligned} \oint_{\mathfrak{A}_I} dz \partial_z \partial_w \ln E(z, w|\Omega) &= 0 \\ \oint_{\mathfrak{B}_I} dz \partial_z \partial_w \ln E(z, w|\Omega) &= 2\pi i \omega_I(w) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.18})$$

and will be of use throughout.

## C Chiral splitting and loop momenta

In this appendix, we review chiral splitting for the  $x^m$ -field in 10-dimensional space-time on a compact Riemann surface of arbitrary genus  $h$ . The functional integrals of interest may be obtained through a generating functional which includes both the contributions from the Koba-Nielsen factor and from multi-linear insertions of the current  $\partial x_m$  required in the vertex operators, and is given by (2.16).

The worldsheet field contents of the pure spinor string has been arranged so that their combined Weyl and holomorphic anomalies cancel. Omitting the contribution to these anomalies from the  $x$ -field by itself, its Gaussian functional integral evaluates to,

$$\mathcal{J} = (2\pi)^{10} \delta(k) \frac{|Z|^{-20}}{(\det 2Y)^5} \exp \left\{ \sum_{i,j=1}^N \mathcal{E}_{ij} \right\} \quad k = \sum_{i=1}^N k_i \quad (\text{C.1})$$

Here, the determinant is taken of the matrix  $Y$  with components  $Y_{IJ} = \text{Im } \Omega_{IJ}$ , while  $Z$  is the chiral scalar partition function which is holomorphic in moduli, and  $\mathcal{E}_{ij}$  is given by,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}_{ij} = & -\frac{1}{2} k_i \cdot k_j G(z_i, z_j) + i k_i \cdot \varepsilon_j \partial_{z_j} G(z_i, z_j) + i k_i \cdot \bar{\eta}_j \partial_{\bar{z}_j} G(z_i, z_j) \\ & + \frac{1}{2} \varepsilon_i \cdot \varepsilon_j \partial_{z_i} \partial_{z_j} G(z_i, z_j) + \frac{1}{2} \bar{\eta}_i \cdot \bar{\eta}_j \partial_{\bar{z}_i} \partial_{\bar{z}_j} G(z_i, z_j) + \bar{\eta}_i \cdot \varepsilon_j \partial_{\bar{z}_i} \partial_{z_j} G(z_i, z_j) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{C.2})$$

The Green function  $G$  is given in (2.11), but may equivalently be replaced by the Arakelov Green function of (2.12). We split  $\mathcal{E}_{ij}$  into a part which involves only the holomorphic prime form  $E(z_i, z_j)$ , another part which involves its complex conjugate, and a part which involves the holomorphic Abelian differentials and  $Y^{IJ}$ ,

$$\mathcal{E}_{ij} = \mathcal{E}_{ij}^+ + \mathcal{E}_{ij}^- + \mathcal{E}_{ij}^0 \quad (\text{C.3})$$

The individual contributions are given as follows,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}_{ij}^+ &= \frac{1}{2} k_i \cdot k_j \ln E(z_i, z_j) - i k_i \cdot \varepsilon_j \partial_{z_j} \ln E(z_i, z_j) - \frac{1}{2} \varepsilon_i \cdot \varepsilon_j \partial_{z_i} \partial_{z_j} \ln E(z_i, z_j) \\ \mathcal{E}_{ij}^- &= \frac{1}{2} k_i \cdot k_j \ln \overline{E(z_i, z_j)} - i k_i \cdot \bar{\eta}_j \partial_{\bar{z}_j} \ln \overline{E(z_i, z_j)} - \frac{1}{2} \bar{\eta}_i \cdot \bar{\eta}_j \partial_{\bar{z}_i} \partial_{\bar{z}_j} \ln \overline{E(z_i, z_j)} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{C.4})$$

and the sum of  $\mathcal{E}_{ij}^0$  is given by,

$$\sum_{i,j=1}^N \mathcal{E}_{ij}^0 = \frac{\pi}{2} Y^{IJ} (\zeta_I - \tilde{\zeta}_I) \cdot (\zeta_J - \tilde{\zeta}_J) \quad (\text{C.5})$$

where we have defined,

$$\begin{aligned}\zeta_I^m &= \sum_{j=1}^N \left( \varepsilon_j^m \omega_I(z_j) + ik_j^m \int_{z_0}^{z_j} \omega_I \right) \\ \tilde{\zeta}_I^m &= \sum_{j=1}^N \left( \bar{\eta}_j^m \bar{\omega}_I(z_j) + ik_j^m \int_{z_0}^{z_j} \bar{\omega}_I \right)\end{aligned}\quad (\text{C.6})$$

Next, we shall represent the combination of the  $(\det Y)$ -denominator and the exponential of the sum of  $\mathcal{E}_{ij}^0$  by an integral over loop momenta  $p_I^m \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$\frac{\exp \left\{ \sum_{i,j} \mathcal{E}_{ij}^0 \right\}}{(\det 2Y)^5} = \int_{\mathbb{R}^{10h}} dp \exp \left\{ -2\pi Y_{IJ} p^I \cdot p^J + 2\pi p^I \cdot (\zeta_I - \tilde{\zeta}_I) \right\} \quad (\text{C.7})$$

The full generating function is then given as follows,

$$\mathcal{J} = \delta(k) \int_{\mathbb{R}^{10h}} dp \mathcal{B}(z_i, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) \overline{\mathcal{B}(z_i, \eta_i, -k_i^*, -p^I | \Omega)} \quad (\text{C.8})$$

where the chiral amplitude is given by,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{B}(z_i, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) &= Z^{-10} \exp \left\{ i\pi \Omega_{IJ} p^I \cdot p^J + \sum_i 2\pi p^I \cdot \left( \varepsilon_i \omega_I(z_i) + ik_i \int_{z_0}^{z_i} \omega_I \right) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq j} \left( ik_i + \varepsilon_i \partial_{z_i} \right) \left( ik_j + \varepsilon_j \partial_{z_j} \right) \ln E(z_i, z_j) \right\}\end{aligned}\quad (\text{C.9})$$

and similarly for its conjugate chiral amplitude. The chiral amplitude may be recast in the form of a chiral correlator,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{B}(z_i, \varepsilon_i, k_i, p^I | \Omega) &= Z^{-10} \exp \left\{ i\pi \Omega_{IJ} p^I \cdot p^J + \sum_i 2\pi i p^I \cdot k_i \int_{z_0}^{z_i} \omega_I \right\} \\ &\quad \times \left\langle \exp \sum_i \left\{ \varepsilon_i \cdot \left( \partial_z x_+(z_i) + 2\pi p^I \omega_I(z_i) \right) + ik_i \cdot x_+(z_i) \right\} \right\rangle\end{aligned}\quad (\text{C.10})$$

The effective rule for the Wick contraction of the chiral bosonic field  $x_+$  is given by (2.19). We have grouped together the various terms involving the polarization vectors, which make it clear that the effective rule for the insertion of the derivatives in the formulation with loop momenta is given by the following substitution,

$$\partial x^m(z) \longrightarrow \partial x_+^m(z) + 2\pi (p^I)^m \omega_I(z) \quad (\text{C.11})$$

It is this effective rule of which we shall make use here when applying chiral splitting.

## D Operator product expansions

The short-distance behavior of the physical canonical fields is given by the following OPEs,

$$\begin{aligned} x^m(z)x^n(y) &\sim -\eta^{mn}\ln(z-y) \\ p_\alpha(z)\theta^\beta(y) &\sim \frac{\delta_\alpha^\beta}{z-y} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.1})$$

As a result, the OPEs of the composite matter fields  $d_\alpha, \Pi^m$  defined in (2.4) may be deduced from the OPEs of the physical canonical fields,

$$\begin{aligned} d_\alpha(z)f(x(y),\theta(y)) &\sim \frac{D_\alpha f}{z-y} & d_\alpha(z)d_\beta(y) &\sim -\frac{\gamma_{\alpha\beta}^m \Pi_m}{z-y} \\ \Pi_m(z)f(x(y),\theta(y)) &\sim -\frac{\partial_m f}{z-y} & d_\alpha(z)\Pi^m(y) &\sim \frac{\gamma_{\alpha\beta}^m \partial\theta^\beta}{z-y} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.2})$$

where  $D_\alpha$  is the superspace derivative defined in (2.29), from which the BRST transformations of the matter fields in (2.26) may be evaluated. The OPEs of the ghost fields are given by,

$$\begin{aligned} w_\alpha(z)\lambda^\beta(y) &\sim \frac{\delta_\alpha^\beta + (\gamma^m\lambda)_\alpha\Lambda_m^\beta}{z-y} \\ \bar{w}^\alpha(z)\bar{\lambda}_\beta(y) &\sim \frac{\delta^\alpha_\beta + (\gamma_m\bar{\lambda})^\alpha\bar{\Lambda}_\beta^m - (\gamma_m r)^\alpha\phi_\beta^m}{z-y} \\ s^\alpha(z)r_\beta(y) &\sim \frac{\delta^\alpha_\beta + (\gamma_m\bar{\lambda})^\alpha\psi_\beta^m}{z-y} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.3})$$

The presence of the functions  $\Lambda_m^\beta, \bar{\Lambda}_\beta^m, \phi_\beta^m, \psi_\beta^m$  is required in order for the OPEs to be compatible with the pure spinor constraints (2.1), and specifically to cancel the singularities in the OPE of the fields  $w_\alpha, \bar{w}_\alpha, s^\alpha$  with the pure spinor constraints of (2.1). To do so,  $\Lambda_m^\beta$  and  $\psi_\beta^m$  must satisfy,

$$\begin{aligned} (\gamma^n\lambda)_\alpha(\Lambda_n\gamma^m\lambda) + (\gamma^m\lambda)_\alpha &= 0 \\ (\gamma^n\bar{\lambda})^\alpha(\psi_n\gamma^m\bar{\lambda}) + (\gamma^m\bar{\lambda})^\alpha &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.4})$$

while  $\bar{\Lambda}_\beta^m$  and  $\phi_\beta^m$  must satisfy the following set of coupled equations,

$$\begin{aligned} (\gamma_m\bar{\lambda})^\alpha + (\gamma^n\bar{\lambda})^\alpha(\bar{\Lambda}_n\gamma_m\bar{\lambda}) - (\gamma^n r)^\alpha(\phi_n\gamma_m\bar{\lambda}) &= 0 \\ (\gamma^n r)^\alpha + (\gamma^p\bar{\lambda})^\alpha(\bar{\Lambda}_p\gamma^n r) - (\gamma^p r)^\alpha(\phi_p\gamma^n r) &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.5})$$

Note that the functions  $\Lambda_m^\beta, \bar{\Lambda}_\beta^m, \psi_\beta^m$  are commuting, while  $\phi_\beta^m$  is anti-commuting. The solutions to these equations are not unique as there are non-trivial kernels. For example, we cannot solve them simply by setting  $(\Lambda_n\gamma^m\lambda) = -\delta_n^m$  since this would be inconsistent with the constraint  $\lambda\gamma^m\lambda = 0$ . Similarly for the other equations and their solutions.

The contributions from  $\Lambda_m, \bar{\Lambda}_m, \phi_m, \psi_\beta^m$  will cancel out of the OPEs of the composites  $N_{mn}, J, T_\lambda$ , and their analogues for the ghosts  $\bar{w}^\alpha$  and  $s^\alpha$ . Their OPEs with  $\lambda^\alpha$  are given by the corresponding linear transformations on  $\lambda^\alpha$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} N_{mn}(z) \lambda^\alpha(y) &\sim \frac{1}{2} \frac{(\gamma_{mn} \lambda)^\alpha}{z - y} \\ J_\lambda(z) \lambda^\alpha(y) &\sim \frac{\lambda^\alpha}{z - y} \\ T_\lambda(z) \lambda^\alpha(y) &\sim \frac{\partial \lambda^\alpha}{z - y} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.6})$$

while their OPEs with  $w_\alpha$  are subject to extra terms due to the constraints (2.1) and will not be needed here. The OPEs of the currents are more complicated because of the constraints, and we quote here only the relevant results,

$$\begin{aligned} N_{mn}(z) N_{pq}(y) &\sim \frac{\eta_{np} N_{mq} - \eta_{mp} N_{nq} - \eta_{nq} N_{mp} + \eta_{mq} N_{np}}{z - y} \\ &\quad - 3 \frac{\eta_{mq} \eta_{np} - \eta_{mp} \eta_{nq}}{(z - y)^2} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{D.7})$$

**Open Access.** This article is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License ([CC-BY 4.0](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/)), which permits any use, distribution and reproduction in any medium, provided the original author(s) and source are credited.

## References

- [1] D. Friedan, E.J. Martinec and S.H. Shenker, *Conformal Invariance, Supersymmetry and String Theory*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **271** (1986) 93 [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [2] E. D'Hoker and D.H. Phong, *The Geometry of String Perturbation Theory*, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **60** (1988) 917 [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [3] E. D'Hoker and D.H. Phong, *Lectures on two loop superstrings*, *Conf. Proc. C* **0208124** (2002) 85 [[hep-th/0211111](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [4] E. Witten, *Superstring Perturbation Theory Revisited*, [arXiv:1209.5461](#) [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [5] N. Berkovits, *Super Poincaré covariant quantization of the superstring*, *JHEP* **04** (2000) 018 [[hep-th/0001035](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [6] N. Berkovits, *Multiloop amplitudes and vanishing theorems using the pure spinor formalism for the superstring*, *JHEP* **09** (2004) 047 [[hep-th/0406055](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [7] N. Berkovits, *Pure spinor formalism as an  $N = 2$  topological string*, *JHEP* **10** (2005) 089 [[hep-th/0509120](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [8] C.R. Mafra, O. Schlotterer and S. Stieberger, *Complete  $N$ -Point Superstring Disk Amplitude I. Pure Spinor Computation*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **873** (2013) 419 [[arXiv:1106.2645](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [9] C.R. Mafra and O. Schlotterer, *Towards the  $n$ -point one-loop superstring amplitude. Part III. One-loop correlators and their double-copy structure*, *JHEP* **08** (2019) 092 [[arXiv:1812.10971](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

- [10] E. D’Hoker and D.H. Phong, *Two loop superstrings. 1. Main formulas*, *Phys. Lett. B* **529** (2002) 241 [[hep-th/0110247](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [11] E. D’Hoker and D.H. Phong, *Two loop superstrings. 2. The chiral measure on moduli space*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **636** (2002) 3 [[hep-th/0110283](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [12] E. D’Hoker and D.H. Phong, *Two loop superstrings. 3. Slice independence and absence of ambiguities*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **636** (2002) 61 [[hep-th/0111016](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [13] E. D’Hoker and D.H. Phong, *Two loop superstrings 4: The cosmological constant and modular forms*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **639** (2002) 129 [[hep-th/0111040](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [14] E. Witten, *Notes On Super Riemann Surfaces And Their Moduli*, [arXiv:1209.2459](#) [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [15] E. Witten, *Notes On Holomorphic String And Superstring Theory Measures Of Low Genus*, [arXiv:1306.3621](#) [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [16] E. D’Hoker and D.H. Phong, *Two-loop superstrings VI: Non-renormalization theorems and the 4-point function*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **715** (2005) 3 [[hep-th/0501197](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [17] E. D’Hoker and D.H. Phong, *Two-loop superstrings. V. Gauge slice independence of the N-point function*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **715** (2005) 91 [[hep-th/0501196](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [18] E. D’Hoker, M. Gutperle and D.H. Phong, *Two-loop superstrings and S-duality*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **722** (2005) 81 [[hep-th/0503180](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [19] E. D’Hoker and M.B. Green, *Zhang-Kawazumi Invariants and Superstring Amplitudes*, *J. Number Theory* **144** (2014) 111 [arXiv:1308.4597](#) [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [20] E. D’Hoker, M.B. Green, B. Pioline and R. Russo, *Matching the  $D^6 R^4$  interaction at two-loops*, *JHEP* **01** (2015) 031 [[arXiv:1405.6226](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [21] E. D’Hoker and D.H. Phong, *Two-Loop Superstrings. VII. Cohomology of Chiral Amplitudes*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **804** (2008) 421 [[arXiv:0711.4314](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [22] N. Berkovits, *Super-Poincaré covariant two-loop superstring amplitudes*, *JHEP* **01** (2006) 005 [[hep-th/0503197](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [23] N. Berkovits and C.R. Mafra, *Equivalence of two-loop superstring amplitudes in the pure spinor and RNS formalisms*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **96** (2006) 011602 [[hep-th/0509234](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [24] H. Gomez and C.R. Mafra, *The Overall Coefficient of the Two-loop Superstring Amplitude Using Pure Spinors*, *JHEP* **05** (2010) 017 [[arXiv:1003.0678](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [25] H. Gomez, C.R. Mafra and O. Schlotterer, *Two-loop superstring five-point amplitude and S-duality*, *Phys. Rev. D* **93** (2016) 045030 [[arXiv:1504.02759](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [26] H. Gomez and C.R. Mafra, *The closed-string 3-loop amplitude and S-duality*, *JHEP* **10** (2013) 217 [[arXiv:1308.6567](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [27] C.R. Mafra and O. Schlotterer, *Multiparticle SYM equations of motion and pure spinor BRST blocks*, *JHEP* **07** (2014) 153 [[arXiv:1404.4986](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [28] E. D’Hoker and D.H. Phong, *Conformal Scalar Fields and Chiral Splitting on SuperRiemann Surfaces*, *Commun. Math. Phys.* **125** (1989) 469 [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [29] E. D’Hoker and D.H. Phong, *The box graph in superstring theory*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **440** (1995) 24 [[hep-th/9410152](#)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[30] E. D’Hoker, C.R. Mafra, B. Pioline and O. Schlotterer, *Two-loop superstring five-point amplitudes II, Low energy expansion and S-duality*, [arXiv:2008.08687](https://arxiv.org/abs/2008.08687).

[31] E. D’Hoker, C.R. Mafra and O. Schlotterer, *Two-loop superstring five-point amplitudes III, Construction via the RNS formulation*, to appear.

[32] E. D’Hoker, M.B. Green and B. Pioline, *Higher genus modular graph functions, string invariants, and their exact asymptotics*, *Commun. Math. Phys.* **366** (2019) 927 [[arXiv:1712.06135](https://arxiv.org/abs/1712.06135)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[33] E. D’Hoker, M.B. Green and B. Pioline, *Asymptotics of the  $D^8\mathcal{R}^4$  genus-two string invariant*, *Commun. Num. Theor. Phys.* **13** (2019) 351 [[arXiv:1806.02691](https://arxiv.org/abs/1806.02691)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[34] E.P. Verlinde and H.L. Verlinde, *Multiloop Calculations in Covariant Superstring Theory*, *Phys. Lett. B* **192** (1987) 95 [[INSPIRE](#)].

[35] E.P. Verlinde and H.L. Verlinde, *Chiral Bosonization, Determinants and the String Partition Function*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **288** (1987) 357 [[INSPIRE](#)].

[36] E. Witten, *Twistor — Like Transform in Ten-Dimensions*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **266** (1986) 245 [[INSPIRE](#)].

[37] J.P. Harnad and S. Shnider, *Constraints and field equations for ten-dimensional super Yang-Mills theory*, *Commun. Math. Phys.* **106** (1986) 183 [[INSPIRE](#)].

[38] P.A. Grassi and L. Tamassia, *Vertex operators for closed superstrings*, *JHEP* **07** (2004) 071 [[hep-th/0405072](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/0405072)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[39] G. Policastro and D. Tsimpis,  *$R^4$ , purified*, *Class. Quant. Grav.* **23** (2006) 4753 [[hep-th/0603165](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/0603165)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[40] N. Berkovits, *Origin of the Pure Spinor and Green-Schwarz Formalisms*, *JHEP* **07** (2015) 091 [[arXiv:1503.03080](https://arxiv.org/abs/1503.03080)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[41] N. Berkovits, *Untwisting the pure spinor formalism to the RNS and twistor string in a flat and  $AdS_5 \times S^5$  background*, *JHEP* **06** (2016) 127 [[arXiv:1604.04617](https://arxiv.org/abs/1604.04617)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[42] N. Berkovits and N. Nekrasov, *Multiloop superstring amplitudes from non-minimal pure spinor formalism*, *JHEP* **12** (2006) 029 [[hep-th/0609012](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/0609012)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[43] Y. Aisaka and N. Berkovits, *Pure Spinor Vertex Operators in Siegel Gauge and Loop Amplitude Regularization*, *JHEP* **07** (2009) 062 [[arXiv:0903.3443](https://arxiv.org/abs/0903.3443)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[44] P.A. Grassi and P. Vanhove, *Higher-loop amplitudes in the non-minimal pure spinor formalism*, *JHEP* **05** (2009) 089 [[arXiv:0903.3903](https://arxiv.org/abs/0903.3903)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[45] N. Berkovits, *Explaining Pure Spinor Superspace*, [hep-th/0612021](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/0612021) [[INSPIRE](#)].

[46] C.R. Mafra, *Superstring Scattering Amplitudes with the Pure Spinor Formalism*, Ph.D. Thesis, Sao Paulo, IFT, (2008), [arXiv:0902.1552](https://arxiv.org/abs/0902.1552) [[INSPIRE](#)].

[47] C.R. Mafra, *Pure Spinor Superspace Identities for Massless Four-point Kinematic Factors*, *JHEP* **04** (2008) 093 [[arXiv:0801.0580](https://arxiv.org/abs/0801.0580)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[48] C.R. Mafra and O. Schlotterer, *Two-loop five-point amplitudes of super Yang-Mills and supergravity in pure spinor superspace*, *JHEP* **10** (2015) 124 [[arXiv:1505.02746](https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.02746)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[49] S. Lee, C.R. Mafra and O. Schlotterer, *Non-linear gauge transformations in  $D = 10$  SYM theory and the BCJ duality*, *JHEP* **03** (2016) 090 [[arXiv:1510.08843](https://arxiv.org/abs/1510.08843)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

- [50] C.R. Mafra and O. Schlotterer, *Berends-Giele recursions and the BCJ duality in superspace and components*, *JHEP* **03** (2016) 097 [[arXiv:1510.08846](https://arxiv.org/abs/1510.08846)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [51] C.R. Mafra, O. Schlotterer, S. Stieberger and D. Tsimpis, *A recursive method for SYM  $n$ -point tree amplitudes*, *Phys. Rev. D* **83** (2011) 126012 [[arXiv:1012.3981](https://arxiv.org/abs/1012.3981)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [52] C.R. Mafra and O. Schlotterer, *Towards the  $n$ -point one-loop superstring amplitude. Part I. Pure spinors and superfield kinematics*, *JHEP* **08** (2019) 090 [[arXiv:1812.10969](https://arxiv.org/abs/1812.10969)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [53] C.R. Mafra and O. Schlotterer, *Towards one-loop SYM amplitudes from the pure spinor BRST cohomology*, *Fortsch. Phys.* **63** (2015) 105 [[arXiv:1410.0668](https://arxiv.org/abs/1410.0668)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [54] C.R. Mafra, *Simplifying the Tree-level Superstring Massless Five-point Amplitude*, *JHEP* **01** (2010) 007 [[arXiv:0909.5206](https://arxiv.org/abs/0909.5206)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [55] C.R. Mafra, *PSS: A FORM Program to Evaluate Pure Spinor Superspace Expressions*, [arXiv:1007.4999](https://arxiv.org/abs/1007.4999) [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [56] <http://www.southampton.ac.uk/~crm1n16/pss.html>.
- [57] C.R. Mafra and O. Schlotterer, *Double-Copy Structure of One-Loop Open-String Amplitudes*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **121** (2018) 011601 [[arXiv:1711.09104](https://arxiv.org/abs/1711.09104)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [58] C.R. Mafra and O. Schlotterer, *Solution to the nonlinear field equations of ten dimensional supersymmetric Yang-Mills theory*, *Phys. Rev. D* **92** (2015) 066001 [[arXiv:1501.05562](https://arxiv.org/abs/1501.05562)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [59] C.R. Mafra and O. Schlotterer, *Cohomology foundations of one-loop amplitudes in pure spinor superspace*, [arXiv:1408.3605](https://arxiv.org/abs/1408.3605) [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [60] L. Álvarez-Gaumé, G.W. Moore and C. Vafa, *Theta Functions, Modular Invariance and Strings*, *Commun. Math. Phys.* **106** (1986) 1 [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [61] D.J. Gross, J.A. Harvey, E.J. Martinec and R. Rohm, *Heterotic String Theory. 1. The Free Heterotic String*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **256** (1985) 253 [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [62] D.J. Gross, J.A. Harvey, E.J. Martinec and R. Rohm, *Heterotic String Theory. 2. The Interacting Heterotic String*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **267** (1986) 75 [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [63] G.W. Moore, *Modular Forms and Two Loop String Physics*, *Phys. Lett. B* **176** (1986) 369 [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [64] A.A. Belavin, V. Knizhnik, A. Morozov and A. Perelomov, *Two and Three Loop Amplitudes in the Bosonic String Theory*, *JETP Lett.* **43** (1986) 411 *Phys. Lett. B* **177** (1986) 324 [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [65] G. Bossard, C. Cosnier-Horeau and B. Pioline, *Exact effective interactions and 1/4-BPS dyons in heterotic CHL orbifolds*, *SciPost Phys.* **7** (2019) 028 [[arXiv:1806.03330](https://arxiv.org/abs/1806.03330)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [66] M.B. Green, J.H. Schwarz and L. Brink,  *$N = 4$  Yang-Mills and  $N = 8$  Supergravity as Limits of String Theories*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **198** (1982) 474 [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [67] J.J.M. Carrasco and H. Johansson, *Five-Point Amplitudes in  $N = 4$  Super-Yang-Mills Theory and  $N = 8$  Supergravity*, *Phys. Rev. D* **85** (2012) 025006 [[arXiv:1106.4711](https://arxiv.org/abs/1106.4711)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [68] Z. Bern, J.J.M. Carrasco and H. Johansson, *New Relations for Gauge-Theory Amplitudes*, *Phys. Rev. D* **78** (2008) 085011 [[arXiv:0805.3993](https://arxiv.org/abs/0805.3993)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[69] Z. Bern, J.J.M. Carrasco and H. Johansson, *Perturbative Quantum Gravity as a Double Copy of Gauge Theory*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **105** (2010) 061602 [[arXiv:1004.0476](https://arxiv.org/abs/1004.0476)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[70] Z. Bern, J.J. Carrasco, M. Chiodaroli, H. Johansson and R. Roiban, *The Duality Between Color and Kinematics and its Applications*, [arXiv:1909.01358](https://arxiv.org/abs/1909.01358) [[INSPIRE](#)].

[71] I. Itenberg and G. Mikhalkin, *Geometry in the tropical limit*, *Mathematische Semesterberichte* **59** (2012) 57.

[72] P. Tourkine, *Tropical Amplitudes*, *Annales Henri Poincaré* **18** (2017) 2199 [[arXiv:1309.3551](https://arxiv.org/abs/1309.3551)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[73] M.G. Schmidt and C. Schubert, *Worldline Green functions for multiloop diagrams*, *Phys. Lett. B* **331** (1994) 69 [[hep-th/9403158](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/9403158)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[74] K. Roland and H.-T. Sato, *Multiloop worldline Green functions from string theory*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **480** (1996) 99 [[hep-th/9604152](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/9604152)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[75] P. Dai and W. Siegel, *Worldline Green Functions for Arbitrary Feynman Diagrams*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **770** (2007) 107 [[hep-th/0608062](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/0608062)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[76] P. Tourkine, *Integrands and loop momentum in string and field theory*, *Phys. Rev. D* **102** (2020) 026006 [[arXiv:1901.02432](https://arxiv.org/abs/1901.02432)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[77] J. Bjornsson and M.B. Green, *5 loops in 24/5 dimensions*, *JHEP* **08** (2010) 132 [[arXiv:1004.2692](https://arxiv.org/abs/1004.2692)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[78] J. Bjornsson, *Multi-loop amplitudes in maximally supersymmetric pure spinor field theory*, *JHEP* **01** (2011) 002 [[arXiv:1009.5906](https://arxiv.org/abs/1009.5906)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[79] C.R. Mafra, O. Schlotterer and S. Stieberger, *Explicit BCJ Numerators from Pure Spinors*, *JHEP* **07** (2011) 092 [[arXiv:1104.5224](https://arxiv.org/abs/1104.5224)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[80] S. He, R. Monteiro and O. Schlotterer, *String-inspired BCJ numerators for one-loop MHV amplitudes*, *JHEP* **01** (2016) 171 [[arXiv:1507.06288](https://arxiv.org/abs/1507.06288)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[81] L. Magnea, S. Playle, R. Russo and S. Sciuto, *Two-loop Yang-Mills diagrams from superstring amplitudes*, *JHEP* **06** (2015) 146 [[arXiv:1503.05182](https://arxiv.org/abs/1503.05182)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[82] Z. Bern, L.J. Dixon, D.C. Dunbar and D.A. Kosower, *One loop n point gauge theory amplitudes, unitarity and collinear limits*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **425** (1994) 217 [[hep-ph/9403226](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-ph/9403226)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[83] E.J. Martinec, *Nonrenormalization Theorems and Fermionic String Finiteness*, *Phys. Lett. B* **171** (1986) 189 [[INSPIRE](#)].

[84] E. Witten, *More On Superstring Perturbation Theory: An Overview Of Superstring Perturbation Theory Via Super Riemann Surfaces*, [arXiv:1304.2832](https://arxiv.org/abs/1304.2832) [[INSPIRE](#)].

[85] M.B. Green and P. Vanhove, *Duality and higher derivative terms in M-theory*, *JHEP* **01** (2006) 093 [[hep-th/0510027](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/0510027)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[86] M.B. Green, J.G. Russo and P. Vanhove, *Modular properties of two-loop maximal supergravity and connections with string theory*, *JHEP* **07** (2008) 126 [[arXiv:0807.0389](https://arxiv.org/abs/0807.0389)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

[87] S. Abreu, L.J. Dixon, E. Herrmann, B. Page and M. Zeng, *The two-loop five-point amplitude in  $\mathcal{N} = 4$  super-Yang-Mills theory*, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **122** (2019) 121603 [[arXiv:1812.08941](https://arxiv.org/abs/1812.08941)] [[INSPIRE](#)].

- [88] D. Chicherin, T. Gehrmann, J.M. Henn, P. Wasser, Y. Zhang and S. Zoia, *The two-loop five-particle amplitude in  $\mathcal{N} = 8$  supergravity*, *JHEP* **03** (2019) 115 [[arXiv:1901.05932](https://arxiv.org/abs/1901.05932)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [89] S. Abreu, L.J. Dixon, E. Herrmann, B. Page and M. Zeng, *The two-loop five-point amplitude in  $\mathcal{N} = 8$  supergravity*, *JHEP* **03** (2019) 123 [[arXiv:1901.08563](https://arxiv.org/abs/1901.08563)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [90] S. Caron-Huot, D. Chicherin, J. Henn, Y. Zhang and S. Zoia, *Multi-Regge Limit of the Two-Loop Five-Point Amplitudes in  $\mathcal{N} = 4$  Super Yang-Mills and  $\mathcal{N} = 8$  Supergravity*, [arXiv:2003.03120](https://arxiv.org/abs/2003.03120) [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [91] Z. Bern, S. Davies and T. Dennen, *The Ultraviolet Structure of Half-Maximal Supergravity with Matter Multiplets at Two and Three Loops*, *Phys. Rev. D* **88** (2013) 065007 [[arXiv:1305.4876](https://arxiv.org/abs/1305.4876)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [92] O. Alvarez, *Theory of Strings with Boundaries: Fluctuations, Topology, and Quantum Geometry*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **216** (1983) 125 [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [93] M. Bianchi and A. Sagnotti, *Open Strings and the Relative Modular Group*, *Phys. Lett. B* **231** (1989) 389 [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [94] L. Magnea, R. Russo and S. Sciuto, *Two-loop Euler-Heisenberg effective actions from charged open strings*, *Int. J. Mod. Phys. A* **21** (2006) 533 [[hep-th/0412087](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-th/0412087)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [95] L. Magnea, S. Playle, R. Russo and S. Sciuto, *Multi-loop open string amplitudes and their field theory limit*, *JHEP* **09** (2013) 081 [[arXiv:1305.6631](https://arxiv.org/abs/1305.6631)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [96] A.C. Edison and S.G. Naculich, *SU( $N$ ) group-theory constraints on color-ordered five-point amplitudes at all loop orders*, *Nucl. Phys. B* **858** (2012) 488 [[arXiv:1111.3821](https://arxiv.org/abs/1111.3821)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [97] Z. Bern, J.S. Rozowsky and B. Yan, *Two loop four gluon amplitudes in  $N = 4$  superYang-Mills*, *Phys. Lett. B* **401** (1997) 273 [[hep-ph/9702424](https://arxiv.org/abs/hep-ph/9702424)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [98] N. Berkovits, *Infinite Tension Limit of the Pure Spinor Superstring*, *JHEP* **03** (2014) 017 [[arXiv:1311.4156](https://arxiv.org/abs/1311.4156)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [99] T. Adamo and E. Casali, *Scattering equations, supergravity integrands, and pure spinors*, *JHEP* **05** (2015) 120 [[arXiv:1502.06826](https://arxiv.org/abs/1502.06826)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [100] Y. Geyer, L. Mason, R. Monteiro and P. Tourkine, *Two-Loop Scattering Amplitudes from the Riemann Sphere*, *Phys. Rev. D* **94** (2016) 125029 [[arXiv:1607.08887](https://arxiv.org/abs/1607.08887)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [101] Y. Geyer and R. Monteiro, *Two-Loop Scattering Amplitudes from Ambitwistor Strings: from Genus Two to the Nodal Riemann Sphere*, *JHEP* **11** (2018) 008 [[arXiv:1805.05344](https://arxiv.org/abs/1805.05344)] [[INSPIRE](#)].
- [102] J. Fay, *Theta Functions on Riemann Surfaces*, *Lect. Notes Math.* **352** Springer, Berlin, Germany (1973).
- [103] J.I. Igusa, *Theta Functions*, Springer Verlag, (1972).